

# Algebraic Geometry, Algebraic Topology, and Riemann Surfaces

Linden Disney-Hogg

October 2020

## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>I</b>	<b>The Introductory Material</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Groups, Rings, and Modules</b>	<b>5</b>
2.1	Groups . . . . .	6
2.1.1	Polygon Groups . . . . .	6
2.1.2	The Modular Group . . . . .	6
2.1.3	Group Presentations . . . . .	7
2.2	Rings . . . . .	7
2.2.1	Basic Definitions . . . . .	7
2.2.2	Localisation . . . . .	8
2.3	Modules . . . . .	8
2.4	Field Extensions . . . . .	9
<b>3</b>	<b>Galois Theory</b>	<b>9</b>
3.1	Solvability by Radicals . . . . .	9
<b>4</b>	<b>Complex Analysis</b>	<b>10</b>
4.1	Fixing Definitions . . . . .	10
4.2	Möbius Transformations . . . . .	10
4.3	Integral Theorems . . . . .	11
4.4	Analytic Varieties . . . . .	11
<b>5</b>	<b>Category Theory</b>	<b>11</b>
5.1	Functors . . . . .	12
5.1.1	Adjoint Functors . . . . .	13
5.2	Universal Properties(?) . . . . .	13
5.3	Abelian Categories . . . . .	14

<b>6</b>	<b>Homological Algebra</b>	<b>14</b>
6.1	Derived Functors . . . . .	14
<b>7</b>	<b>Complex Manifolds</b>	<b>15</b>
7.1	Bundles . . . . .	15
7.1.1	$\mathbb{CP}^n$ . . . . .	15
7.2	Dolbeault Cohomology . . . . .	17
7.3	Calculus . . . . .	17
<b>8</b>	<b>Varieties</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>II</b>	<b>Algebraic Topology</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Regular Topology</b>	<b>19</b>
9.1	General Topology . . . . .	19
9.2	Differential Topology . . . . .	19
9.3	Orientation and Integration . . . . .	20
<b>10</b>	<b>de-Rham Theory</b>	<b>21</b>
10.1	General Cohomology . . . . .	21
10.2	The de-Rham Complex . . . . .	22
10.3	The Poincaré Lemma . . . . .	23
10.4	Mayer-Vietoris . . . . .	24
10.5	Cohomology of Bundles . . . . .	28
10.6	The Poincaré Dual and Thom Isomorphism. . . . .	30
10.7	Euler Class . . . . .	32
<b>11</b>	<b>Characteristic Classes</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Understanding Manifolds</b>	<b>37</b>
12.1	Bundle Theory . . . . .	37
12.1.1	Dual Bundles . . . . .	37
12.1.2	Pullbacks . . . . .	37
12.1.3	Tubular Neighbourhoods . . . . .	39
12.1.4	Projective Bundles . . . . .	39
12.2	Splitting Principle . . . . .	41
12.3	Serre Duality . . . . .	41
12.3.1	Serre Duality for Riemann Surfaces . . . . .	43
12.4	Adjunction Formula . . . . .	45
12.5	Classification of Bundles . . . . .	45
12.5.1	Universal Bundle and Classifying Space . . . . .	45
12.6	Almost Complex Manifolds . . . . .	46
12.7	Orientability . . . . .	46
12.8	Spin Bundles . . . . .	46
12.9	Calabi-Yau Manifolds . . . . .	47
12.10	Classification through Holonomy . . . . .	48

<b>13 Sheaves</b>	<b>48</b>
13.1 Definitions . . . . .	48
13.2 Examples . . . . .	50
13.3 Direct Image and Pullback . . . . .	50
13.4 The Ideal Sheaf . . . . .	51
13.5 Cohomology . . . . .	51
13.5.1 Sheaf Cohomology . . . . .	51
13.5.2 Čech Cohomology . . . . .	52
13.5.3 Equivalence . . . . .	53
13.5.4 Properties . . . . .	53
<b>14 Schemes</b>	<b>53</b>
14.1 Spec . . . . .	53
 <b>III Riemann Surfaces</b>	 <b>55</b>
<b>15 Examples of Riemann Surfaces</b>	<b>55</b>
15.1 Smooth Projective Plane Curves . . . . .	55
15.2 Complex Tori . . . . .	56
<b>16 Properties of Riemann Surfaces</b>	<b>56</b>
16.1 Riemann Hurwitz . . . . .	56
16.2 Automorphisms . . . . .	59
16.3 Field of Functions . . . . .	59
16.4 Homology . . . . .	60
16.5 Differentials . . . . .	61
16.6 The Riemann Matrix . . . . .	61
16.6.1 Riemann Matrices of Covered Spaces . . . . .	62
<b>17 Cohomology</b>	<b>64</b>
<b>18 Divisors and their Applications</b>	<b>64</b>
18.1 Divisors . . . . .	64
18.2 Abel-Jacobi . . . . .	66
18.3 Picard Group . . . . .	67
18.3.1 Link to Divisors . . . . .	69
18.3.2 Square Roots . . . . .	69
18.4 Riemann-Roch and Weierstrass Points . . . . .	70
18.5 Subcanonical Points . . . . .	73
18.6 Theta Function . . . . .	73
18.6.1 Generalised Theta Functions . . . . .	75
18.7 Theta Divisor . . . . .	75
18.7.1 Via Line Bundles . . . . .	75
18.7.2 Via the Theta Functions . . . . .	77
18.7.3 Calculating the Riemann Constant Vector . . . . .	79
18.8 Jacobi Inversion . . . . .	80

18.9 Baker-Akhiezer Functions . . . . .	80
18.10 Prime Form . . . . .	81
<b>19 Classifying Riemann Surfaces</b>	<b>81</b>
19.1 Monodromy . . . . .	81
19.2 Invariants . . . . .	82
19.2.1 $j$ -invariant . . . . .	82
19.2.2 Igusa invariants . . . . .	82
<b>20 Spin Structures</b>	<b>82</b>
20.1 A particular quadratic form . . . . .	82
20.2 Spin Structures on Riemann Surfaces . . . . .	83
20.3 Invariant Spin Structures . . . . .	83
<b>21 Extended example</b>	<b>86</b>
21.1 Singularities . . . . .	86
21.2 Genus . . . . .	87
21.3 Symmetries . . . . .	87
21.4 Riemann's Bilinears and Period Matrices . . . . .	88
<b>22 <math>g = 2</math></b>	<b>91</b>
22.1 Classification by automorphisms . . . . .	91
22.2 $D_6$ . . . . .	91
22.3 Burnside's Curve . . . . .	93
<b>IV Elliptic Curves</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>23 Periodic Functions</b>	<b>94</b>
23.1 Generic results . . . . .	94
23.2 Automorphisms . . . . .	95
23.3 Theta Functions . . . . .	96
23.4 Jacobi Elliptic Functions . . . . .	96
23.5 The Weierstrass $\wp$ Function . . . . .	96
23.5.1 Addition Theorems . . . . .	98
23.6 Related Weierstrass Functions . . . . .	98
<b>24 Elliptic Integrals</b>	<b>98</b>
24.1 Elliptic Integral of the First Kind . . . . .	98
24.2 Reduction of Elliptic Integrals . . . . .	102
24.2.1 $d = 3$ . . . . .	102
24.2.2 $d = 4$ . . . . .	103
24.3 Connection to Elliptic Functions . . . . .	107
<b>25 Abel's Inversion Theorem</b>	<b>107</b>
<b>26 Elliptic Curves over Number Fields</b>	<b>108</b>

<b>V</b>	<b>Abelian Varieties</b>	<b>108</b>
<b>27</b>	<b>Polarisations</b>	<b>108</b>
<b>28</b>	<b>Jacobian Varieties</b>	<b>108</b>
28.1	Automorphism Groups . . . . .	108
28.2	Poincaré Reducibility Theorem . . . . .	109
28.3	Split Jacobians . . . . .	109
<b>29</b>	<b>Prym Varieties</b>	<b>109</b>
<b>VI</b>	<b>Moduli and Stacks</b>	<b>110</b>

## 1 Introduction

The purpose of this document is to provide a central, searchable, version of the sum of my knowledge on algebraic geometry and Riemann surfaces. I will try and include more modern perspectives using category theory ideas as well as other more historical perspectives.

An incomplete list of the sources for this document are:

- *Principles of Algebraic Geometry* (Griffiths)
- *Algebraic Geometry* (Milne)

I will also endeavour to number equations and results, and reference them when I use them.

The notes on elliptic functions and curves come from:

- *Elliptic Functions and Applications* (Lawden)
- *Elliptic Curves* (McKean, Moll)
- often wikipedia
- nlab
- *Algebraic Curves and Riemann Surfaces* (Miranda)
- *Arithmetic of Elliptic Curves* (Silverman)
- The Digital Library of Mathematical Functions ([dlmf.nist.gov](http://dlmf.nist.gov))

and are available in a rearranged form in my *Elliptic.pdf* notes.

## Part I

# The Introductory Material

## 2 Groups, Rings, and Modules

This section will be largely stating definitions and results for concreteness.

## 2.1 Groups

### 2.1.1 Polygon Groups

For this section, the important references are [47] and [?].

**Definition 2.1.** We denote the tessellation of  $\mathcal{U}$  by  $n$ -gons,  $m$  of which meet at a vertex (if it exists), by  $\{m, n\} := \hat{\mathcal{M}}(m, n)$ , where

$$\mathcal{U} = \begin{cases} \mathbb{P}^1 & (n-2)(m-2) < 4 \\ \mathbb{C} & (n-2)(m-2) = 4 \\ H & (n-2)(m-2) > 4 \end{cases}.$$

**Definition 2.2.** A **Petrie polygon** of  $\{n, m\}$  is a polygon given by a ‘zigzag’ of vertices in  $\{n, m\}$  in which every two consecutive sides, but no three, belong to a face.

**Definition 2.3.** A **map**  $\mathcal{M}$  is an embedding of a graph s.t. the components of the complement of  $\mathcal{M}$ , the faces, are homeomorphic to open discs.

**Example 2.4.** Every tessellation  $\{n, m\}$  gives a map.

put in definition of regular maps

**Definition 2.5.** We define a map  $\{n, m\}_r$  to be a map constructed by identifying vertices of a Petrie polygon of  $\{n, m\}$  that are separated by  $r$  steps.

### 2.1.2 The Modular Group

**Definition 2.6.** The **modular group** is

$$\Gamma = PSL(2, \mathbb{Z}) = SL(2, \mathbb{Z}) / \{\pm I\}$$

It is alternatively given as the group of fractional linear transforms

$$z \mapsto \frac{az + b}{cz + d}$$

s.t.  $a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $ad - bc = 1$ .

**Lemma 2.7.** The modular group is generated by the transforms  $s(z) = -1/z$ ,  $t(z) = z + 1$ . This gives it the presentation

$$\Gamma \cong \langle s, t \mid s^2 = \text{id} = (st)^3 \rangle$$

**Definition 2.8.** The **congruence subgroups** of  $\Gamma$  are, for  $N \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,

$$\Gamma(N) = \{M \in \Gamma \mid M \equiv I \pmod{N}\}$$

**Definition 2.9.** A **Fuchsian group** is a discrete subgroup of  $PSL(2, \mathbb{R})$ .

### 2.1.3 Group Presentations

**Theorem 2.10.** *Every group has a presentation.*

**Corollary 2.11.** *Every finite group is finitely presented.*

**Remark.** *There is, in general, no algorithm for telling if a finitely presented group is finite. GAP has methods to attempt this (see here) but these cannot be guaranteed to work. The approach taken uses the Todd-Coxeter coset-enumeration algorithm.*

## 2.2 Rings

### 2.2.1 Basic Definitions

**Definition 2.12.** *Elements of a ring  $R$  with a multiplicative inverse are called **units**. Denote the group of units as  $R^\times$ .*

**Definition 2.13.** *An **ideal** of a ring  $R$  is an additive subgroup  $I$  s.t.  $\forall r \in R, x \in I, rx \in I$ .*

**Definition 2.14.** *An ideal  $I$  is called **principal** if  $\exists a \in R$  s.t.  $I = (a)$ .*

**Definition 2.15.** *A ring  $R$  is an **integral domain** if it is not zero and  $ab = 0 \Rightarrow a = 0$  or  $b = 0$ .*

**Definition 2.16.** *Let  $R$  be an integral domain. Then  $r \in R$  is **irreducible** if*

- $r \neq 0$
- $r$  not a unit
- $r = st \Rightarrow s$  or  $t$  a unit

**Definition 2.17.** *An integral domain is called a **Unique Factorisation Domain (UFD)** if every non-zero non-unit can be written as a finite product of irreducible elements uniquely up to units and reordering.*

**Definition 2.18.** *An integral domain is a **Principal Ideal Domain (PID)** if every ideal is principal.*

**Proposition 2.19.** *Every PID is a UFD*

**Proposition 2.20.**  *$R$  a UFD  $\Rightarrow R[X]$  a UFD.*

**Notation.** *We denote the ring of holomorphic functions on a neighbourhood of  $z \in \mathbb{C}^n$  as  $\mathcal{O}_{n,z}$ . We let  $\mathcal{O}_n = \mathcal{O}_{n,0}$ .*

**Definition 2.21.** *An ideal  $I \triangleleft R$  is **prime** if  $\forall a, b \in R, ab \in I \Rightarrow a \in I$  or  $b \in I$ .*

**Example 2.22.**  *$\langle p \rangle \triangleleft \mathbb{Z}$  is prime.*

**Proposition 2.23.** *An ideal is prime iff  $R/I$  is an ideal domain.*

**Definition 2.24.** *We define the set of all prime ideal of  $R$  to be the **spectrum**  $\text{Spec}(R)$ .*

**Remark.** *We will define a topology on  $\text{Spec}(R)$  later when we talk about varieties.*

**Definition 2.25.** An ideal  $I \triangleleft R$  is **maximal** if  $I \subseteq J \triangleleft R \Rightarrow I = J$ ,

**Proposition 2.26.**  $I$  is maximal iff  $R/I$  is a field.

**Proposition 2.27.** Maximal ideals are prime

**Example 2.28.**  $\langle X^2 - 2 \rangle \triangleleft \mathbb{Q}[X]$  is maximal as

$$\mathbb{Q}[X] / \langle X^2 - 2 \rangle \cong \mathbb{Q}[\sqrt{2}]$$

is a field.

### 2.2.2 Localisation

**Definition 2.29.** Let  $S$  be a multiplicatively closed subset of  $R$  containing 1. We define the **localisation of  $R$  as  $S$**  to be

$$S^{-1}R = \{(r, s) \in R \times S \mid (r_1, s_1) \sim (r_2, s_2) \Leftrightarrow \exists t \in S, t(s_1r_2 - s_2r_1) = 0\}.$$

We think of these as the fractions  $\frac{r}{s}$ , and it is then made into a ring in the obvious way.

**Proposition 2.30.** If  $0 \in S$ ,  $S^{-1}R$  is the trivial ring.

**Proposition 2.31.** There is a ring hom

$$j : R \rightarrow S^{-1}R$$

$$r \mapsto \frac{r}{1}$$

defined via the universal property that, if  $f : R \rightarrow T$  is a ring hom s.t.  $\forall s \in S, f(s)$  is a unit, then  $\exists! g : S^{-1}R \rightarrow T$  s.t.  $f = g \circ j$ .

**Definition 2.32.** A **local ring** is a ring with a unique maximal ideal.

**Proposition 2.33.** Given a prime ideal  $\mathfrak{p} \triangleleft R$ , the localisation at  $S = R \setminus \mathfrak{p}$  is a local ring.

**Definition 2.34.** A morphism of local rings  $A, B$ , i.e. a **local homomorphism**, is a ring hom  $\phi : A \rightarrow B$  s.t.  $\phi^{-1}(\mathfrak{m}_B) = \mathfrak{m}_A$ , where the  $\mathfrak{m}$  are the unique maximal ideals.

## 2.3 Modules

**Definition 2.35.** Given  $R$ -modules  $M, N$  we define the **tensor product**  $T = M \otimes_R N$  with  $R$ -bilinear map  $\phi : M \times N \rightarrow T$  by the universal property

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M \times N & \xrightarrow{\phi} & T \\ & \searrow \phi' & \downarrow \exists! \\ & & T' \end{array}$$



## 2.4 Field Extensions

**Definition 2.36.** A **field extension** is a pair of fields  $K \subseteq L$  s.t. the operations of  $K$  are those of the restriction of  $L$ . It is denoted  $L/K$ .

**Example 2.37.** The set

$$\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2}) = \{a + b\sqrt{2} \mid a, b \in \mathbb{Q}\}$$

is a field extension of  $\mathbb{Q}$ .

**Proposition 2.38.** If  $L/K$  is a field extension,  $L$  is a  $K$ -vector space.

**Definition 2.39.** The **degree** of a field extension  $L/K$  is the dimension of  $L$  as a  $K$ -vector space. It is denoted  $[L : K]$ .

**Example 2.40.**  $[\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2}) : \mathbb{Q}] = 2$  as it has basis  $\{1, \sqrt{2}\}$

**Definition 2.41.** The **transcendence degree** of a field extension  $L/K$  is the maximum cardinality of an algebraic independent subset of  $L$  over  $K$ .

**Example 2.42.**  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2}, e)/\mathbb{Q}$  has transcendence degree 1.

replace these examples with more  $\mathbb{C}$  oriented ones.

## 3 Galois Theory

This section will be predominantly based off of [48].

**Example 3.1.** The value  $q = \sqrt{(2 + \sqrt{2})(3 + \sqrt{3})}$  has minimal polynomial  $x^8 - 24x^6 + 144x^4 - 288x^2 + 144$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$ , and the Galois group of the field extension  $\mathbb{Q}[q]$  is  $\cong Q_8$ , the quaternions (Milne, “Field Theory”, p. 46).

In fact, we have the following important theorem, the reference for which comes from here.

**Theorem 3.2** (Artin). Let  $K$  be a field and  $G$  a finite group of field automorphisms of  $K$ , then  $K$  is a Galois extension of the fixed field  $K^G$  with Galois group  $G$ , and moreover  $[K : K^G] = |G|$ .

**Corollary 3.3.** Every finite group is the Galois group of some field extension.

*Proof.* Given any field  $k$ , take the extension  $kG$  that has all the elements of  $G$  as indeterminates, and then let  $G$  act on  $kG$  via its group action on the indeterminates, extended  $k$ -linearly. This then satisfies the requirements of the above theorem.  $\square$

**Remark.** It is not known whether every finite group is the Galois group of an extension of  $\mathbb{Q}$  - this is called the inverse Galois problem. Taking  $k = \mathbb{Q}$  in the above would not work, as we do not know if  $\mathbb{Q} = \mathbb{Q}[G]^G$ .

### 3.1 Solvability by Radicals

For algorithms see [36, 15]. Note the paper by Distler is the algorithm used by the GAP package Radiroot.

## 4 Complex Analysis

This section should roughly contain the results you would prove in an undergraduate course in complex methods or complex analysis. For the most part these will be presented without proof, unless I believe that the proof adds to the knowledge somehow.

**Work on this as it becomes necessary**

We start by considering coordinates on  $\mathbb{C}$ . Viewing  $\mathbb{C} \cong \mathbb{R}^2$  we have either

$$z = x + iy, \bar{z} = x - iy \text{ or } x = \frac{z + \bar{z}}{2}, y = \frac{z - \bar{z}}{2i}$$

The corresponding derivatives are related by

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial z} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - i \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \right), \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + i \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \right)$$

### 4.1 Fixing Definitions

I will fix some notation with a definition:

**Definition 4.1.** Denote the **Upper Half Plane (UHP)** in  $\mathbb{C}$  as

$$H = \{z \in \mathbb{C} \mid \Im z > 0\}$$

**Proposition 4.2.** Given the metric  $ds^2 = \frac{dx^2 + dy^2}{y^2}$ , where  $z = x + iy$ ,  $H$  becomes a model of the hyperbolic plane.

**Proposition 4.3.** The group  $PSL(2, \mathbb{R})$ , acting via Möbius transformation, is the group of hyperbolic isometries.

The UHP will end up being a special case of the more general **Siegel upper half space** later (ref this). It will serve as a classifying space later in conjunction with the modular group.

### 4.2 Möbius Transformations

**Definition 4.4.** The **group of Möbius transformations** is the group of transformations of the Riemann sphere given by

$$z \mapsto \frac{az + b}{cz + d},$$

where  $ad - bc \neq 0$  for  $a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{C}$ .

**Lemma 4.5.** The Möbius group is  $\cong PSL(2, \mathbb{C})$ .

Recall that for any distinct  $z_1, z_2, z_3 \in \mathbb{C}$  we have a Möbius transform that sends them to  $0, 1, \infty$  given by

$$f(z) = \frac{z - z_1}{z - z_3} \frac{z_2 - z_3}{z_2 - z_1}$$

**Definition 4.6.** Given distinct  $z_0, z_1, z_2, z_3 \in \mathbb{C}$  the **cross ratio** is

$$\frac{z_0 - z_1}{z_0 - z_3} \frac{z_2 - z_3}{z_2 - z_1}$$

**Proposition 4.7.** Distinct  $z_0, z_1, z_2, z_3 \in \mathbb{C}$  lie on a circline iff their cross-ratio is real.

### 4.3 Integral Theorems

A corollary to Cauchy's integral formula is the following:

**Theorem 4.8** (Liouville). *A bounded entire function  $f : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is constant.*

### 4.4 Analytic Varieties

**Definition 4.9.** *Given  $U \subset \mathbb{C}^n$  and open subset,  $V \subset U$  is an **analytic variety** if  $\forall p \in U, \exists U_p$  an open neighbourhood s.t.*

$$V \cap U_p = \{f_1 = \cdots = f_k = 0\}$$

where  $f_i : \mathbb{C}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  are holomorphic functions.

**Definition 4.10.** *An analytic variety  $V \subset U$  is **irreducible** if  $\nexists V_1, V_2 \subset U, V_i \neq V, \text{ s.t. } V = V_1 \cup V_2$ .  $V$  is **irreducible at**  $p \in V$  if  $\exists U'$  a neighbourhood of  $p$  s.t.  $V \cap U'$  is irreducible*

**Proposition 4.11.** *If  $f \in \mathcal{O}_n$  is irreducible then the variety defined by the zero locus of  $f$  is irreducible at 0.*

## 5 Category Theory

Here we will cover the basic category theory required to be able to provide a slightly general formalism to many of the concepts in topology.

**Definition 5.1.** *A **Category**  $\mathcal{C}$  is a collection of objects  $\text{Obj}\mathcal{C}$  s.t.  $\forall A, B \in \text{Obj}\mathcal{C}$  (for simplicity we will often write  $A, B \in \mathcal{C}$ ) there is a set of morphisms  $\text{Hom}(A, B)$  under the conditions*

- $\forall f \in \text{Hom}(A, B), g \in \text{Hom}(B, C), \exists g \circ f \in \text{Hom}(A, C)$
- the composition  $\circ$  is associative with identity  $1_A \in \text{Hom}(A, A)$

**Example 5.2.** *The collection of sets, with morphisms given by functions, is a category Set*

**Example 5.3.** *There is a category whose objects are Euclidean spaces  $\{\mathbb{R}^n\}$ , and whose morphisms are smooth maps. It is denoted  $\text{CartSp}_{\text{smooth}}$*

**Example 5.4.** *The category of differential commutative-graded algebras (DGCA's) with homomorphisms for morphisms exists. Recall a graded algebra  $A$  has a map  $\text{deg} : A \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ , and to be graded-commutative means*

$$\forall a, b \in A, ab = (-1)^{\text{deg}(a)\text{deg}(b)}ba$$

*The differential means we have a map  $d : A \rightarrow A$  s.t.*

$$d(ab) = (da)b + (-1)^{\text{deg}(a)}a(db)$$

*and  $d$  is compatible with the grading.*

## 5.1 Functors

**Definition 5.5.** A **covariant functor** is a map between categories  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  in the sense that for  $A \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $F(A) \in \mathcal{D}$ , and  $f \in \text{Hom}(A, B)$  for  $A, B \in \mathcal{C}$  gives  $F(f) \in \text{Hom}(F(A), F(B))$  obeying

- $F(g \circ f) = F(g) \circ F(f)$
- $F(1_A) = 1_{F(A)}$

A **contravariant functor** is a map  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  s.t. for  $f \in \text{Hom}(A, B)$ ,  $F(f) \in \text{Hom}(F(B), F(A))$

**Example 5.6.** Given a category  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $A \in \mathcal{C}$ , the map  $h^A : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Set}$  given by

- for  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $h^A(X) = \text{Hom}(A, X)$
- for  $f \in \text{Hom}(X, Y)$ ,  $h^A(f) : \text{Hom}(A, X) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(A, Y)$  as

$$h^A(f)(g) = f \circ g$$

is a covariant functor called the **hom functor**. There is a corresponding contravariant functor  $h_A$  given by  $h_A(X) = \text{Hom}(X, A)$ .

**Definition 5.7.** If  $F, G$  are functors  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  then a **natural transformation** from  $F$  to  $G$  is a family of morphisms s.t.

- $\forall X \in \mathcal{C}$  and object  $\exists \eta_X \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(X), G(X))$  (called a component)
- $\forall X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $f \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y)$

$$\eta_Y \circ F(f) = G(f) \circ \eta_X$$

i.e. the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(X) & \xrightarrow{\eta_X} & G(X) \\ F(Y) \downarrow & & \downarrow G(f) \\ F(Y) & \xrightarrow{\eta_Y} & G(Y) \end{array}$$

commutes (this was drawn for a covariant functor, but a similar diagram can be drawn for contravariant ones). The set of all natural transformations  $F \rightarrow G$  is notated as  $\text{Nat}(F, G)$ . A natural transformation for which all components are isomorphisms is called a **natural isomorphism**.

**Definition 5.8.** A functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Set}$  is **representable** if  $\exists A \in \mathcal{C}$  s.t.  $F$  is naturally isomorphic to  $h^A$ .

**Lemma 5.9** (Yoneda Lemma). Given a category  $\mathcal{C}$  and a covariant functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Set}$  for each  $A \in \mathcal{C}$  we have an isomorphism

$$\text{Nat}(h^A, F) \cong F(A)$$

A special case is when  $F = h^B$  for  $B \in \mathcal{C}$  and

$$\text{Nat}(h^A, h^B) \cong \text{Hom}(B, A)$$

The analogue exists if  $F$  is contravariant which says

$$\text{Nat}(h_A, F) \cong F(A)$$

### 5.1.1 Adjoint Functors

**Definition 5.10.** Let  $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}$  be categories with functors

$$\mathcal{D} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{R} \\ \xleftarrow{L} \end{array} \mathcal{C}$$

The pair of functors  $L, R$  are called **adjoint functors**, with  $L/R$  the **left/right adjoint** if  $\exists$  a natural isomorphism between the hom functors

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(L(\cdot), \cdot) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(\cdot, R(\cdot))$$

## 5.2 Universal Properties(?)

**Definition 5.11.** Given objects  $X, Y, Z$  and two morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Z, g : Y \rightarrow Z$ , the **pullback** of the morphisms is an object  $P$  with morphisms  $p_1 : P \rightarrow X, p_2 : P \rightarrow Y$  s.t. the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \xrightarrow{p_2} & Y \\ p_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

commutes, and moreover that the pullback is universal wrt to this diagram i.e.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Q & & & & \\ & \searrow^{q_2} & & & \\ & & P & \xrightarrow{p_2} & Y \\ & \searrow^{q_1} & \downarrow p_1 & & \downarrow g \\ & & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

$\exists! u$  (dashed arrow from  $Q$  to  $P$ )

The pullback is often denoted as  $P = X \times_Z Y$

**Definition 5.12.** Given  $f : X \rightarrow Z, g : Y \rightarrow Z$  a **lift** of  $f$  to  $Y$  is a map  $\tilde{f} : X \rightarrow Y$  s.t.  $f = g \circ \tilde{f}$ .

**Proposition 5.13.** A section of the pullback  $X \times_Z Y$  gives a lift of  $f$ .

*Proof.* Given a section  $s : X \rightarrow P$ , we get a lift  $\tilde{f} = p_2 \circ s$ . □

**Lemma 5.14** (Five Lemma). Given a commutative diagram of abelian groups

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} \dots & \longrightarrow & A & \longrightarrow & B & \longrightarrow & C & \longrightarrow & D & \longrightarrow & E & \longrightarrow & \dots \\ & & \downarrow \alpha & & \downarrow \beta & & \downarrow \gamma & & \downarrow \delta & & \downarrow \epsilon & & \\ \dots & \longrightarrow & A' & \longrightarrow & B' & \longrightarrow & C' & \longrightarrow & D' & \longrightarrow & E' & \longrightarrow & \dots \end{array}$$

where the rows are exact, if  $\alpha, \beta, \delta, \epsilon$  are isomorphisms, then so is  $\gamma$ .

**Definition 5.15.** Given a category  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$ , and  $f, g \in \text{Hom}(X, Y)$ , the **equalizer** is  $E \in \mathcal{C}$  with  $\text{eq} \in \text{Hom}(E, X)$  s.t. the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
E & \xrightarrow{eq} & X & \xrightleftharpoons[g]{f} & Y \\
\uparrow \exists! u & \nearrow m & & & \\
O & & & & 
\end{array}$$

**Proposition 5.16.** *Equalisers are unique up to isomorphism*

*Proof.* If  $O = E'$  is another equaliser, then we know we have maps  $u, u'$  giving the isomorphism.  $\square$

### 5.3 Abelian Categories

**Definition 5.17.** *A category is **abelian** if it is preadditive and:*

- *it has a zero object,*
- *it has all binary biproducts,*
- *it has all kernels and cokernels,*
- *all monomorphisms and epimorphisms are normal.*

**Example 5.18.** *The category of abelian groups is an abelian category (hence the name).*

**Remark.** *The idea behind an abelian category is that questions of exactness are naturally posed in one, and so this is the realm where we do homological algebra (see §6).*

## 6 Homological Algebra

An excellent source for this is [52].

### 6.1 Derived Functors

**Definition 6.1.** *Let  $A, B$  be abelian categories s.t  $A$  has enough injectives, and  $F : A \rightarrow B$  a covariant left-exact functor. The **right derived functors** of  $F$  are  $R^i F : A \rightarrow B$  for  $i \geq 0$  defined as follows: for  $X \in \text{Ob}(A)$  take an injective resolution*

$$0 \rightarrow X \rightarrow I^0 \rightarrow I^1 \rightarrow I^2 \rightarrow \dots$$

*and its image under  $F$  (removing the first term)*

$$0 \rightarrow F(I^0) \rightarrow F(I^1) \rightarrow F(I^2) \rightarrow \dots$$

*We then define*

$$R^i F(X) = (\ker : F(I^i) \rightarrow F(I^{i+1})) / (\text{Im} : F(I^{i-1}) \rightarrow F(I^i))$$

**Lemma 6.2.**  $R^0 F = F$ .

## 7 Complex Manifolds

### 7.1 Bundles

We recall a few necessary bundle definitions and results:

**Definition 7.1.** The tensor product of vector bundles  $E, F \rightarrow M$  is  $E \otimes F \rightarrow M$  s.t.  $(E \otimes F)_m = E_m \otimes F_m$  for  $m \in M$ .

**Lemma 7.2.** The tensor product on vector bundles is associative and commutative.

**Lemma 7.3.** If  $O$  is the trivial line bundle then  $E \otimes O = E$ .

We make a few more useful definitions.

**Definition 7.4.** The **canonical bundle** on a space  $X$  with  $\dim X = n$  is the line bundle of exterior  $n$ -forms on  $X$ . It is often denoted  $K = K_X$ , not to be confused with the canonical divisor.

**Remark.** Note we know the canonical bundle is a line bundle as there is only 1 basis element of  $n$ -forms on an  $n$ -dimensional space.

**Remark.** Note that if  $X$  is an  $n$ -dimensional complex manifold then the differential forms considered are the holomorphic differential forms so  $K_X = \wedge^n T_{1,0}^* X$  (see §...).

#### 7.1.1 $\mathbb{CP}^n$

**Definition 7.5.** The **hyperplane bundle** on  $\mathbb{CP}^n$  is the bundle  $\mathbb{C}^{n+1} \setminus 0 \rightarrow \mathbb{CP}^n$  given by the standard projection  $(z_0, \dots, z_n) \rightarrow [z_0 : \dots : z_n]$ . It is often denoted  $\mathcal{O}(1)$ . We denote  $\mathcal{O}(k) = \mathcal{O}(1)^{\otimes k}$  for  $k > 0$ .

**Definition 7.6.** The **tautological line bundle** on projective space is  $\mathcal{O}(-1) = \mathcal{O}(1)^*$ . We denote  $\mathcal{O}(-k) = \mathcal{O}(-1)^{\otimes k}$ .

**Proposition 7.7.** The canonical bundle on the projective space is  $K = \mathcal{O}(-n-1)$ .

*Proof.* This requires the Euler sequence and the Chern class, see here. This is much easier on  $\mathbb{P}^1$ , where we know we must have  $\deg K = 2g - 2 = -2$  as it a Riemann surface (see later).  $\square$

**Theorem 7.8** (Birkhoff-Grothendieck). Every holomorphic vector bundle  $E \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^1$  is holomorphically isomorphic to a direct sum of line bundles, that is

$$E \cong \mathcal{O}(a_1) \oplus \dots \mathcal{O}(a_n)$$

**Corollary 7.9.**  $E$  is trivial iff  $\deg E = 0$  and  $H^0(\mathbb{P}^1, E(-1)) = 0$ .

For proof and discussion of both of these results, see [27].

We might want to understand the sections of  $\mathcal{O}(k)$ . Note given a linear map  $\alpha : \mathbb{C}^{n+1} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  we can consider its restriction to a fibre over  $x \in \mathbb{CP}^n$ , which is a linear map of 1d complex vector spaces, hence corresponds to an element in  $\mathbb{C}$ . This gives a section  $s_\alpha$ .  $s_\alpha$  is holomorphic, and moreover we have the following result:

**Proposition 7.10.** Every holomorphic section of  $\mathcal{O}(1)$  is of the form  $s_\alpha$  for  $\alpha \in (\mathbb{C}^{n+1})^*$ .

This results has a natural extension

**Proposition 7.11.** *Every holomorphic section of  $\mathcal{O}(n)$  is of the form  $\bigotimes_{i=1}^j s_{\alpha_i}^{p_i}$  for  $\alpha_i \in \mathbb{C}^{n+1}$ ,  $p_i \in \mathbb{N}$  s.t.  $\sum_i p_i = k$ .*

These results have an alternative understanding:

**Proposition 7.12.** *Holomorphic sections of  $\mathcal{O}(k)$  are exactly degree- $k$  homogeneous polynomials in the coordinates  $z_0, \dots, z_n$ .*

*Proof.* See for example here, here, and here.  $\square$

**Corollary 7.13.** *The space of global sections of  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^1}(n)$  has dimension  $n + 1$  (later we will write this as  $h^0(\mathbb{P}^1, \mathcal{O}(n)) = n + 1$ ).*

**Example 7.14** ([27], p.13, example 3). *Consider the hyperplane bundle  $\mathcal{O}(1)$ , we want to work out its transition functions. On  $U_0 = \{z_0 \neq 0\}$  we take coordinate  $\zeta = z_1/z_0$  and likewise on  $U_1$ . On  $U_0 \cap U_1$  a point is represented as  $[1 : \zeta] = [\zeta^{-1} : 1]$ , and we can take  $z_1$  as the coordinate on the fibre, so we have trivialisations*

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_0 &= (\pi, \psi_0) : \pi^{-1}(U_0) \rightarrow U_0 \times \mathbb{C}, \\ &\quad (z_0, z_1) \rightarrow ([1 : \zeta], z_1), \\ \rho_1 &= (\pi, \psi_1) : \pi^{-1}(U_1) \rightarrow U_1 \times \mathbb{C}, \\ &\quad (z_0, z_1) \rightarrow ([\zeta^{-1} : 1], z_0). \end{aligned}$$

Hence the transition function  $g_{01} = \psi_0 \circ \psi_1^{-1}$  is given by

$$z_1 = g_{01}(z_0, z_1)z_0 \Rightarrow g_{01} = \zeta.$$

In general we then see  $\mathcal{O}(n)$  has transition function  $g_{01} = \zeta^n$ .

**Proposition 7.15.**  *$T\mathbb{P}^1 \cong \mathcal{O}(2)$  and  $T^*\mathbb{P}^1 \cong \mathcal{O}(-2)$ .*

*Proof.* This proof is from [27]. We only need to show one, as they are equivalent. We will show  $T^*\mathbb{P}^1 \cong \mathcal{O}(-2)$ . We know we have coordinate  $\zeta$  on  $U_0$ ,  $\tilde{\zeta} = \zeta^{-1}$  on  $U_1$ , and that the bundle directions are generated by  $d\zeta, -d\tilde{\zeta}$  respectively. The maps giving the trivialisations are

$$\begin{aligned} (\zeta, f_0(\zeta)d\zeta) &\mapsto (\zeta, f_0(\zeta)), \\ (\tilde{\zeta}, f_1(\tilde{\zeta})d\tilde{\zeta}) &\mapsto (\tilde{\zeta}, f_1(\tilde{\zeta})). \end{aligned}$$

We have

$$-d\zeta = \zeta^2 d\tilde{\zeta} \Rightarrow f_0(\zeta)d\zeta = -\zeta^{-2}f_1(\zeta^{-1})d\zeta$$

and  $f_0 = g_{01}f_1 \Rightarrow g_{01} = \zeta^{-2}$ . Hence  $T^*\mathbb{P}^1 \cong \mathcal{O}(-2)$ . Note we chose the sign s.t. we preserved orientation.  $\square$



## 7.2 Dolbeault Cohomology

**Notation.** We denote the vector space of  $k$ -forms on  $M$  as  $\Omega^k(M)$ .

As  $\Omega^1(M) \otimes \mathbb{C}$  is dual to  $TM \otimes \mathbb{C}$ , we similarly get a decomposition

$$\Omega^1(M) \otimes \mathbb{C} = \Omega^{1,0}(M) \oplus \Omega^{0,1}(M)$$

Through the wedge product we then have

$$\begin{aligned}\Omega^n(M) &= \oplus_{p+q=n} \Omega^{p,q}(M) \\ \Omega^{p,q}(M) &= \bigwedge^p \Omega^{1,0}(M) \wedge \bigwedge^q \Omega^{0,1}(M)\end{aligned}$$

**Notation.** We let  $\pi^{p,q} : \Omega^n \rightarrow \Omega^{p,q}$  be the appropriate projection maps

**Definition 7.16.** The *Dolbeault operators* are

$$\begin{aligned}\partial &= \pi^{p+1,q} \circ d : \Omega^{p,q} \rightarrow \Omega^{p+1,q} \\ \bar{\partial} &= \pi^{p,q+1} \circ d : \Omega^{p,q} \rightarrow \Omega^{p,q+1}\end{aligned}$$

**Lemma 7.17.** We have  $d = \partial + \bar{\partial}$  and  $\partial^2 = \bar{\partial}^2 = \partial\bar{\partial} + \bar{\partial}\partial = 0$ .

With this lemma we can define the complex analogy of the de-Rham cohomology

**Definition 7.18.** The *Dolbeault cohomology* is

$$H_{\bar{\partial}}^{p,q}(M) = \ker \{ \bar{\partial} : \Omega^{p,q} \rightarrow \Omega^{p,q+1} \} / \bar{\partial} \Omega^{p,q-1}$$

We can then state an analogy of the Poincare lemma:

**Proposition 7.19** ( $\bar{\partial}$ -Poincaré lemma). For  $\Delta \subset \mathbb{C}^n$  a polycylinder,

$$H_{\bar{\partial}}^{p,q}(\Delta) = 0 \text{ for } q \geq 1$$

## 7.3 Calculus

Suppose we have a positive definite Hermitian inner-product on  $T_p^{1,0}M$ ,  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_p$ , for each  $p \in M$  a complex manifold. This induces a metric  $h$  by

$$h_p(X_p, Y_p) = \langle X_p, Y_p \rangle_p$$

**Definition 7.20.** A *coframe* for  $h$  is a tuple of forms  $\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n$  s.t.

$$h = \sum \phi_i \otimes \bar{\phi}_i$$

Writing  $\phi_i = \alpha_i + i\beta_i$  where  $\alpha_i, \beta_i$  are real differential forms we get

$$h = \sum (\alpha_i \otimes \alpha_i + \beta_i \otimes \beta_i) - i(\alpha_i \otimes \beta_i - \beta_i \otimes \alpha_i)$$

**Notation.** The Riemannian metric induced on  $M$  is  $g = \sum_i (\alpha_i \otimes \alpha_i + \beta_i \otimes \beta_i)$  while the associated  $(1,1)$ -form is  $\omega = \frac{1}{2} \sum_i (\alpha_i \otimes \beta_i - \beta_i \otimes \alpha_i) = \frac{i}{2} \sum_i \phi_i \wedge \bar{\phi}_i$ .

**Lemma 7.21.**  $\omega$  is natural in the sense that if  $f : N \rightarrow M$  is holomorphic then  $\omega_N = f^* \omega_M$ .

**Theorem 7.22** (Wirtinger). Let  $S \subset M$  be a submanifold of dimension  $d$ . Then

$$\text{Vol}(S) = \frac{1}{d!} \int_S \omega^d$$

*Proof.* We will show the case of  $S = M$ , but then the result follows by naturality. Note the volume element associated to the Riemannian metric  $g$  is

$$d\mu = \bigwedge^n (\alpha_i \wedge \beta_i)$$

whereas

$$\omega^n = \bigwedge^n \left( \sum \alpha_i \wedge \beta_i \right) = n! \cdot d\mu$$

□

## 8 Varieties

Recall we defined the set  $\text{Spec}(A)$  of a ring  $A$  previously. We will now expand on that idea.

**Definition 8.1.** Given an ideal  $I \triangleleft A$ , define  $V(I) \subseteq \text{Spec}(A)$  to be the set of all prime ideals containing  $I$ .

**Lemma 8.2.** We have properties:

- $V((0)) = \text{Spec}(A)$
- $V(A) = \emptyset$
- $V(IJ) = V(I) \cup V(J)$ ,
- $V(\sum_i I_i) = \cap V(I_i)$ ,
- $V(I) \subseteq V(J) \Leftrightarrow \sqrt{I} \supseteq \sqrt{J}$ .

**Corollary 8.3.** The closed cover given by  $\{V(I)\}$  defines a topology on  $\text{Spec}(A)$ .

## Part II

# Algebraic Topology

In every mathematical physicist's life there comes a point when they need to know some algebraic topology, and there are many great resources to learn this from. These will be my personal notes which will accumulate many resources, which I will try to reference, though I doubt I will give when each one was used. The current list is

- *Differential Forms in Algebraic Topology* (Bott, Tu)
- nlab
- *Algebraic Topology and Vector Bundles and K-Theory* (Hatcher)
- often wikipedia
- this blog post

I hope to come back some day and fill in all the proofs, but in the name of current expedience I will avoid this.

## 9 Regular Topology

### 9.1 General Topology

**Definition 9.1.** An **open cover** of a space  $X$  is a collection of open sets  $U_\alpha \subset X$  s.t.  $X = \bigcup_\alpha U_\alpha$

**Definition 9.2.** A map of topological spaces  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is **proper** if  $\forall K \subset Y$  compact,  $f^{-1}(K) \subset X$  is compact.

**Proposition 9.3.** The image of a proper map in a locally-compact Hausdorff space is closed

**Proposition 9.4.** A compact subspace of a Hausdorff space is closed.

### 9.2 Differential Topology

**Definition 9.5.** Given a manifold  $M$  with atlas  $\{(U_\alpha, \phi_\alpha)\}$  the **cocycle condition** is that on triple intersect  $U_\alpha \cap U_\beta \cap U_\gamma$

$$g_{\alpha\beta}g_{\beta\gamma} = g_{\alpha\gamma}$$

**Definition 9.6.** A **critical point** of a smooth map of manifolds  $f : M \rightarrow N$  is  $p \in M$  s.t.  $(f_*)_p : T_p M \rightarrow T_{f(p)} N$  is not surjective. A **critical value** is the image of a critical point

**Theorem 9.7** (Sard). The set of critical values of a smooth map has measure 0.

**Definition 9.8.** A **good cover** of an  $n$ -dimensional manifold is an open cover where all finite intersections  $U_{\alpha_0} \cap \dots \cap U_{\alpha_p}$  are diffeomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . A manifold with a good cover is said to be of **finite type**.

**Theorem 9.9.** Every manifold is of finite type, and moreover if it is compact, the cover can be chosen to be finite.

*Proof.* Use a cover provided by taking geodesic balls at each point. The second point follows from the definition of compact.  $\square$

**Definition 9.10.** A **partition of unity** on a manifold  $M$  is a collection of non-negative  $C^\infty$  functions  $\{\rho_\alpha\}$  s.t.

- Each  $p \in M$  has a neighbourhood where  $\sum \rho_\alpha$  is a finite sum

- $\sum \rho_\alpha$

**Remark.** It can be, on occasion, useful to know at least one bump function which can be argued can be put into a partition of unity. My favourite is  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{\frac{-1}{1-x^2}} & |x| < 1 \\ 0 & |x| \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

**Definition 9.11.** Given a manifold with open cover  $\{U_\alpha\}$ , a partition of unity  $\{\rho_\alpha\}$  s.t  $\text{supp}(\rho_\alpha) \subset U_\alpha$  is called **subordinate** to  $\{U_\alpha\}$ .

**Proposition 9.12.** Given a manifold with open cover  $\{U_\alpha\}$ :

- $\exists$  a partition of unity subordinate to it.
- $\exists$  a partition of unity  $\{\rho_\beta\}$  s.t. each  $\rho_\beta$  has compact support and  $\exists \alpha$  s.t.  $\text{supp}(\rho_\beta) \subset U_\alpha$

**Proposition 9.13.** Every manifold is paracompact.

### 9.3 Orientation and Integration

We may use partitions of unity to define the integral of a top form over a manifold  $M$ .

**Theorem 9.14** (Stokes' Theorem). If  $\omega$  is an  $(n-1)$ -form with compact support on an oriented  $n$ -dimensional manifold  $M$

$$\int_M d\omega = \int_{\partial M} \omega$$

**Proposition 9.15.** Given a diffeomorphism  $T : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\omega \in \Omega^n(\mathbb{R}^n)$

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} T^* \omega = \text{sgn } J(T) \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \omega$$

where  $J(T)$  is the determinant of the Jacobian of the transform.

**Remark.** Note the above prop makes sense, as if  $T$  is invertible, then  $\text{sgn } J(T)$  never changes sign as it cannot be 0.

**Definition 9.16.** A diffeomorphism for which  $\text{sgn } J(T) = 1$  is call **orientation preserving**

**Definition 9.17.** Let  $M$  be a smooth manifold with atlas  $\{(U_\alpha, \phi_\alpha)\}$ . We call the atlas **oriented** if all the transition functions  $g_{\alpha\beta} = \phi_\alpha \circ \phi_\beta^{-1}$  are orientation preserving. A manifold is called **orientable** if it has an oriented atlas.

**Remark.** We will see a different definition later in §12.7 using more powerful topological tools.

**Proposition 9.18.** An  $n$ -dimensional manifold is orientable iff it has a global nowhere-vanishing  $n$ -form.

**Example 9.19.**  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is orientable as it has the global non-vanishing  $n$ -form  $dx_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dx_n$  where  $\{x_i\}$  are cartesian coordinates.

## 10 de-Rham Theory

### 10.1 General Cohomology

We will start with some basic definitions and results, with very few proofs for now.

**Definition 10.1.** A direct sum of vector spaces  $C = \oplus_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} C^k$  is called a **differential complex** if there are homomorphisms

$$\dots \rightarrow C^{k-1} \xrightarrow{d} C^k \xrightarrow{d} C^{k+1} \rightarrow \dots$$

s.t.  $d^2 = 0$

**Definition 10.2.** The **cohomology** of  $C$  is  $H(C) = \oplus_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} H^k(C)$  where

$$H^k(C) = (\ker d \cap C^k) / (\text{Im } d \cap C^k)$$

**Definition 10.3.** A (linear) map  $f : A \rightarrow B$  between two differential complexes is called a **chain map** if it commutes with the differential operator, i.e.  $f \circ d_A = d_B \circ f$ .

**Proposition 10.4** (Snake Lemma). A short exact sequence of chain maps

$$0 \rightarrow A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C \rightarrow 0$$

induces a long exact sequence of cohomology

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \dots & \longrightarrow & H^k(A) & \xrightarrow{f^*} & H^k(B) & \xrightarrow{g^*} & H^k(C) \\ & & & & & & \downarrow d^* \\ & & & & & & H^{k+1}(A) \longrightarrow \dots \end{array}$$

*Proof.* Consider the diagram obtained

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\ & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A^{k+1} & \xrightarrow{f} & B^{k+1} & \xrightarrow{g} & C^{k+1} \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \uparrow d_A & & \uparrow d_B & & \uparrow d_C \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A^k & \xrightarrow{f} & B^k & \xrightarrow{g} & C^k \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \end{array}$$

$f$  induces a well defined map on the cohomology  $f^*$  as  $f(a + d_A \omega) = f(a) + (f \circ d_A)(\omega) = f(a) + (d_B \circ f)(\omega)$ , so  $[f(a)] = [f(a + d_A \omega)]$  in  $H^\bullet(B)$ . Likewise for  $g$ .

Pick  $c \in C^k$ , then by surjectivity of  $g$ ,  $\exists b \in B^k$ ,  $g(b) = c$ . If  $dc = 0$ , we can say  $g(db) = dg(b) = dc = 0$ , so by exactness  $db = f(a)$  for some  $a \in A^{k+1}$ . As such we define  $d^* : H^k(C) \rightarrow H^{k+1}(A)$  by  $d^*[c] = [a]$ .  $\square$

## 10.2 The de-Rham Complex

I have seen a lot of de-Rham definitions in the past, so I will come back and fill this in when I have time.

**Definition 10.5.** The **de-Rham complex**  $\Omega_{dR}^\bullet$  is a differential complex where  $C^k = \Omega_{dR}^k$  are the  $k$ -forms and  $d$  is the exterior derivative.

**Remark.** The de-Rham complex for Euclidean spaces admits a functorial description as  $\Omega^\bullet$  is the unique contravariant functor from Euclidean spaces with smooth maps to commutative differential graded algebras s.t.  $\Omega^0$  is the pullback of functions. The fact that the de-Rham complex admits this functorial description tells us that pullback commutes with the exterior derivative. This definition can be extended to the category of differentiable manifolds.

**Example 10.6.** The cohomology of the de-Rham complex is sometimes denoted as  $H_{dR}^k$ . When the context makes clear that we are considering the de-Rham cohomology we omit the  $dR$ . Consider the point space  $*$ . Functions on  $*$  are specified by points in  $\mathbb{R}$ , and are all constant, so closed. There can be no cohomology higher than the dimension of the space, so we get

$$H_{dR}^k(*) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{R} & k = 0 \\ 0 & k > 0 \end{cases}$$

Closed 0-forms on  $\mathbb{R}$  are again constant functions. Further, any one form  $\omega = g(x)dx$  can be written as  $df$  for  $f(x) = \int_0^x g(u)du$  so we get

$$H_{dR}^k(\mathbb{R}) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{R} & k = 0 \\ 0 & k > 0 \end{cases}$$

If  $U \subset \mathbb{R}$  is a union of  $m$  disjoint open intervals in  $\mathbb{R}$  we have

$$H_{dR}^k(U) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{R}^m & k = 0 \\ 0 & k > 0 \end{cases}$$

**Remark.** As there are no  $k$  forms on a manifold  $M$  when  $k > \dim M$ ,  $H_{dR}^k(M) = 0$ .

**Definition 10.7.** The **Betti numbers** of a manifold are  $b_k(M) = \dim H_{dR}^k(M)$ .

**Definition 10.8.** The **de-Rham complex with compact support** is the differential complex of the  $k$ -forms with compact support, denoted  $\Omega_c^\bullet(M)$ . The cohomology is denoted  $H_c^\bullet(M)$ .

**Proposition 10.9.** If  $M$  is compact,  $H_c^k(M) = H_{dR}^k(M)$ .

**Example 10.10.** We can consider the same cohomologies as above to get

$$H_c^k(*) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{R} & k = 0 \\ 0 & k > 0 \end{cases}$$

as all functions on  $*$  are constant.

There are no constant functions on  $\mathbb{R}$  with compact support except for the zero map, so  $H_c^0(\mathbb{R}) = 0$ . The only other non-trivial cohomology is  $H_c^1(\mathbb{R})$ . Our previous construction (starting the integral at

$-\infty$  which we can do as  $g$  has compact support) of an  $f$  s.t.  $df = g(x)dx$  works iff  $f$  gets compact support, and this happens where the integral  $\int_{\mathbb{R}} g(x) dx = 0$  so

$$H_c^1(\mathbb{R}) = \Omega_c^1(\mathbb{R}) / \ker \int_{\mathbb{R}}$$

**Remark.**  $\Omega_c^\bullet$  also admits a functorial description, but we must restrict from all smooth maps as pullbacks of functions with compact support might not have compact support.  $\Omega_c^\bullet$  can be made either as

- a contravariant functor when maps are restricted to be proper
- a covariant functor when maps are restricted to be inclusions of open sets.

### 10.3 The Poincaré Lemma

We will now build up a bit of theory culminating in a full understanding of de-Rham cohomology of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . We start by considering the maps

$$\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\pi} \\ \xleftarrow{s} \end{array} \mathbb{R}^n$$

given by  $\pi(x, t) = x$ ,  $s(x) = (x, 0)$ . Under the functor  $\Omega^\bullet$  we get

$$\Omega^\bullet(\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}) \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\pi^*} \\ \xrightarrow{s^*} \end{array} \Omega^\bullet(\mathbb{R}^n)$$

**Proposition 10.11.** *The induced maps on cohomology*

$$H_{dR}^k(\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}) \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\pi^*} \\ \xrightarrow{s^*} \end{array} H_{dR}^k(\mathbb{R}^n)$$

are inverse isomorphisms.

*Proof.* Certainly  $\pi \circ s = \text{id}_{\mathbb{R}^n} \Rightarrow s^* \circ \pi^* = \text{id}_{\Omega^\bullet(\mathbb{R}^n)} \Rightarrow s^* \circ \pi^* = \text{id}_{H_{dR}^\bullet(\mathbb{R}^n)}$ . It remains to show  $\pi^* \circ s^* = \text{id}$  in cohomology. Note that it is not the identity on the complex, as for example  $(\pi^* \circ s^*)f(x, t) = f(x, 0)$ . However it is sufficient to show  $\exists K : \Omega^k(\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}) \rightarrow \Omega^{k-1}(\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R})$

$$1 - \pi^* \circ s^* = \pm(d \circ K \pm K \circ d)$$

As the RHS maps closed forms to exact ones, it induces 0 on the cohomology. **finish constructing K.** □

**Corollary 10.12** (Poincaré lemma). *We have*

$$H_{dR}^k(\mathbb{R}^n) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{R} & k = 0 \\ 0 & k > 0 \end{cases}$$

**Corollary 10.13.** *Applying the proposition to an atlas for a manifold  $M$  we get*

$$H_{dR}^k(M \times \mathbb{R}) \cong H^k(M) \Rightarrow H^k(M \times \mathbb{R}^n) \cong H^k(M)$$





Calling the map  $\mathbb{R} \oplus \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \oplus \mathbb{R}$   $\delta$ , we can see under  $\delta$ ,  $(\omega, \tau) \mapsto (\omega - \tau, \omega - \tau)$ . Hence  $\dim \operatorname{Im} \delta = 1 \Rightarrow \dim \ker \delta = 1$ . Counting dimensions of the maps we see

$$H^0(S^1) \cong \mathbb{R} \cong H^1(S^1)$$

We can extend this to calculate for any sphere. Covering  $S^n$  with  $U, V$  the north/south hemisphere respectively extended so they cover the equator, we get  $U \cap V$  is homotopic to  $S^{n-1}$ , and  $U, V$  are contractible. Hence in the Mayer-Vietoris we get a sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \dots & \longrightarrow & H^k(S^n) & \longrightarrow & (\delta_{k0})(\mathbb{R} \oplus \mathbb{R}) & \longrightarrow & H^k(S^{n-1}) \\ & & & & & \searrow d^* & \\ & & & & & & H^{k+1}(S^n) \longrightarrow \dots \end{array}$$

This means that we have for  $k > 0$ ,  $H^k(S^{n-1}) \cong H^{k+1}(S^n)$  and

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & H^0(S^n) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{R} \oplus \mathbb{R} & \longrightarrow & H^0(S^{n-1}) \\ & & & & & \searrow d^* & \\ & & & & & & H^1(S^n) \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

We can then prove by induction that for  $n \geq 1$   $H^k(S^n) = \mathbb{R}$  if  $k = 0, n$  and 0 otherwise.

**Proposition 10.22.** *If a manifold has a finite good cover, then its cohomology is finite dimensional.*

*Proof.* We will use proof by induction on the cardinality of the good cover, noting that if  $M$  is diffeomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}^n$  then we have a cover given by  $M$ , and the result is true by the Poincaré lemma. We now note from the part of the Mayer-Vietoris sequence for  $U \cup V$

$$\dots \rightarrow H^{k-1}(U \cap V) \xrightarrow{d^*} H^k(U \cup V) \xrightarrow{r} H^k(U) \oplus H^k(V) \rightarrow \dots$$

that

$$H^k(U \cup V) \cong \ker r \oplus \operatorname{Im} r \cong \operatorname{Im} d^* \oplus \operatorname{Im} r$$

(this is just the first isomorphisms theorem and exactness). Hence, if  $H^k(U)$ ,  $H^k(V)$ , and  $H^k(U \cap V)$  are f.d. then so is  $H^k(U \cup V)$ .

Now suppose  $M$  has good cover  $\{U_0, \dots, U_p\}$ . Then  $(U_0 \cup \dots \cup U_{p-1}) \cap U_p$  has a good cover

$$\{U_0 \cap U_p, \dots, U_{p-1} \cap U_p\}$$

By the induction hypothesis  $(U_0 \cup \dots \cup U_{p-1}) \cap U_p$  has f.d. cohomology, and so does  $M$  from the Mayer-Vietoris (taking  $U = U_0 \cup \dots \cup U_{p-1}$ ,  $V = U_p$ ).  $\square$

With this results, we can define a related quantity

**Definition 10.23.** *On an  $n$ -dimensional manifold with f.d. cohomology, the **Euler characteristic** of  $M$  is*

$$\chi(M) = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \dim H_{dR}^k(M)$$

We can also build a Mayer-Vietoris sequence for the functor  $\Omega_c^\bullet$  taken to be covariant when restricted to inclusions. The image of the inclusion  $j : U \hookrightarrow M$  under the functor is  $j_* : \Omega_c^\bullet(U) \rightarrow \Omega_c^\bullet(M)$  which extends a form by 0. This gives the sequence

$$\Omega_c^\bullet(M) \xleftarrow{\text{sum}} \Omega_c^\bullet(U) \oplus \Omega_c^\bullet(V) \xleftarrow{j_* \oplus j_*} \Omega_c^\bullet(U \cap V)$$

**Proposition 10.24.** *The Mayer-Vietoris sequence with compact support*

$$0 \longleftarrow \Omega_c^\bullet(M) \longleftarrow \Omega_c^\bullet(U) \oplus \Omega_c^\bullet(V) \longleftarrow \Omega_c^\bullet(U \cap V) \longleftarrow 0$$

*is exact*

**Remark.** *This is in the opposite direction to our other Mayer-Vietoris sequence for standard de-Rham cohomology. The difference is from the functor being covariant.*

**Proposition 10.25.** *The Mayer-Vietoris sequence with compact support induces a long exact sequence of cohomology*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \dots & \longrightarrow & H_c^k(U \cap V) & \longrightarrow & H_c^k(U) \oplus H_c^k(V) & \longrightarrow & H_c^k(M) \\ & & & & & & \downarrow \\ & & & & & & \text{---} d^* \text{---} \\ & & & & & & \uparrow \\ & & & & & & H_c^{k+1}(U \cap V) \longrightarrow \dots \end{array}$$

**Example 10.26.** *We can use this Mayer-Vietoris sequence to calculate  $H_c^\bullet(S^1)$ , which we can check against  $H_{dR}^\bullet(S^1)$  as they must be the same.*

*Using the same cover as before we get the same part of the sequence*

$$0 \rightarrow H_c^0(S^1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \oplus \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \oplus \mathbb{R} \rightarrow H_c^1(S^1) \rightarrow 0$$

*and again the image and kernel in  $\mathbb{R} \oplus \mathbb{R}$  are 1 dimensional.*

Many of our other results have compact support analogues, e.g.

**Proposition 10.27.** *If a manifold has a finite good cover, then its compact-support cohomology is finite dimensional.*

We can say more about the relation between cohomology using that integration descends to cohomology, giving on oriented  $n$ -dimensional manifolds  $M$  a pairing

$$\int : H^k(M) \otimes H_c^{n-k}(M) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

given by  $(\omega, \tau) \mapsto \int_M \omega \wedge \tau$

**Lemma 10.28.** *The two Mayer-Vietoris sequences may be paired to gether to form the diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\longrightarrow & H^k(U \cup V) & \longrightarrow & H^k(U) \oplus H^k(V) & \longrightarrow & H^k(U \cap V) & \longrightarrow & H^{k+1}(U \cup V) & \longrightarrow \\
& \otimes & & \otimes & & \otimes & & \otimes & \\
\longleftarrow & H_c^{n-k}(U \cup V) & \longleftarrow & H_c^{n-k}(U) \oplus H_c^{n-k}(V) & \longleftarrow & H_c^{n-k}(U \cap V) & \longleftarrow & H_c^{n-k-1}(U \cup V) & \longleftarrow \\
& \downarrow \int_{U \cup V} & & \downarrow \int_U + \int_V & & \downarrow \int_{U \cap V} & & \downarrow \int_{U \cup V} & \\
& \mathbb{R} & & \mathbb{R} & & \mathbb{R} & & \mathbb{R} & 
\end{array}$$

sign-commutative in the sense that

$$\int_{U \cap V} \omega \wedge d_* \tau = \pm \int_{U \cup V} (d^* \omega) \wedge \tau$$

**Remark.** The above lemma is equivalent to saying we get the sign-commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\longrightarrow & H^k(U \cup V) & \longrightarrow & H^k(U) \oplus H^k(V) & \longrightarrow & H^k(U \cap V) & \longrightarrow \\
& \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \\
\longrightarrow & (H_c^{n-k}(U \cup V))^* & \longrightarrow & (H_c^{n-k}(U))^* \oplus (H_c^{n-k}(V))^* & \longrightarrow & (H_c^{n-k}(U \cap V))^* & \longrightarrow
\end{array}$$

**Proposition 10.29** (Poincaré duality). *If  $M$  is an  $n$ -dimensional orientable manifold and has a finite good cover,*

$$H^k(M) \cong (H_c^{n-k}(M))^*$$

*Proof.* Again proceed by induction on the size of the good cover, noting it is true for  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The above lemma used with the five lemma gives that if Poincaré duality holds for  $U, V, U \cap V$  then it holds for  $U \cup V$ .  $\square$

**Remark.** This result can be extended to any orientable manifold

**Corollary 10.30.** *The Euler characteristic any odd-dimensional, compact, orientable manifold is 0*

*Proof.* If  $M$  is compact orientable  $n$ -dimensional, then

$$\dim H^k(M) = \dim H_c^{n-k}(M) = \dim H^{n-k}(M)$$

so if  $n$  odd

$$\begin{aligned}
\chi(M) &= \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \dim H^k(M) \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{n-1}{2}} (-1)^k \dim H^k(M) + \sum_{k=\frac{n+1}{2}}^n (-1)^k \dim H^{n-k}(M) \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{n-1}{2}} (-1)^k \dim H^k(M) + \sum_{k=\frac{n-1}{2}}^0 (-1)^{n-k} \dim H^k(M) \\
&= [1 + (-1)^n] \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{n-1}{2}} (-1)^k \dim H^k(M)
\end{aligned}$$

As  $n$  odd,  $1 + (-1)^n = 0$ . □

## 10.5 Cohomology of Bundles

**Proposition 10.31.** *Let  $M$  be a manifold and  $\{U_\alpha\}$  a collection of open subsets. Then*

$$\begin{aligned}
H_{dR}^k \left( \coprod_{\alpha} U_{\alpha} \right) &= \prod_{\alpha} H_{dR}^k(U_{\alpha}) \\
H_c^k \left( \coprod_{\alpha} U_{\alpha} \right) &= \bigoplus_{\alpha} H_c^k(U_{\alpha})
\end{aligned}$$

**Proposition 10.32** (Künneth Formula).  $H^k(M \times F) = \bigoplus_{p+q=k} H^p(M) \otimes H^q(F)$

With this result we can start to develop more specialised results for cohomology on bundles. For important definitions on bundles look at my EKC of Gauge theory notes. The Künneth formula has a specialisation for fibre bundles.

**Theorem 10.33** (Leray-Hirsch). *Let  $E \rightarrow M$  be a fibre bundle with fibre  $F$ . If there are global cohomology classes  $e_1, \dots, e_r$  on  $E$  which, restricted to each fibre, freely generate the cohomology of  $F$ , then  $H^k(M)$  is a free module over  $H^k(M)$  i.e*

$$H^k(E) \cong H^k(M) \otimes \mathbb{R}\{e_1, \dots, e_r\} \cong H^k(M) \otimes H^k(F)$$

**Proposition 10.34.** *If  $E \rightarrow M$  is a vector bundle, then  $H^k(E) \cong H^k(M)$ .*

*Proof.* Deformation retract onto the zero section of the bundle and then use homotopy invariance of cohomology □

**Remark.** *how does this agree with Leray Hirsch?*

**Proposition 10.35.** *Let  $E \rightarrow M$  be a rank- $k$  vector bundle, where  $E, M$  are orientable and of finite type. Then  $H_c^{p+k}(E) \cong H_c^p(M)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\dim M = n$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} H_c^p(E) &\cong (H^{n+k-p}(E))^* && \text{(Poincaré duality)} \\ &\cong (H^{n+k-p}(M))^* && \text{(homotopy invariance)} \\ &\cong H_c^{p-k}(M) && \text{(Poincaré duality)} \end{aligned}$$

□

**Remark.** This result can be generalised to remove the orientability assumption on  $M$ , using more machinery.

In vector bundles there is an additional type of de-Rham cohomology we can look at

**Definition 10.36.** The **de-Rham complex with compact vertical support** is the differential complex  $\Omega_{cv}^\bullet$  of  $k$ -forms with compact support in the fibres. The associated cohomology is notated as  $H_{cv}^\bullet$ .

**Definition 10.37.** We define the **integration along the fibre** map for a rank- $k$  vector bundle  $\pi : E \rightarrow M$  to be

$$\begin{aligned} \pi_* : \Omega_{cv}^{p+k}(E) &\rightarrow \Omega^p(M) \\ (\pi^*\phi) \wedge f(x,t)dt_{i_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge dt_{i_r} &\mapsto 0 \quad (r < k) \\ (\pi^*\phi) \wedge f(x,t)dt_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge dt_n &\mapsto \phi \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} f(x,t)dt_1 \dots dt_n \end{aligned}$$

where  $t_i$  are coordinates on the fibre, and  $\phi \in \Omega^\bullet(M)$ , so  $\pi^*\phi$  is the pullback to  $E$ .

**Proposition 10.38** (Projection Formula). Let  $\pi : E \rightarrow M$  be an oriented rank- $k$  vector bundle,  $\tau \in \Omega^p(M)$  and  $\omega \in \Omega_{cv}^q(E)$ . Then

$$\pi_*((\pi^*\tau) \wedge \omega) = \tau \wedge \pi_*\omega$$

Moreover, if  $p + q = \dim E$ , then

$$\int_E (\pi^*\tau) \wedge \omega = \int_M \tau \wedge \pi_*\omega$$

**Theorem 10.39** (Thom Isomorphism). If  $E \rightarrow M$  is an orientable rank- $k$  vector bundle with base manifold of finite type then

$$H_{cv}^{p+k}(E) \cong H^p(M)$$

where the isomorphism  $H_{cv}^{p+k}(E) \rightarrow H^p(M)$  is  $\pi_*$ , and the isomorphism  $\mathcal{T} : H^p(M) \rightarrow H_{cv}^{p+k}(E)$  is called the **Thom isomorphism**.

**Remark.** The theorem is actually true for arbitrary manifolds.

**Definition 10.40.** The image of the constant function  $1 \in H^0(M)$  under the Thom isomorphism  $\mathcal{T} : H^p(M) \xrightarrow{\cong} H_{cv}^{p+k}(E)$  is called the **Thom class** of the oriented vector bundle  $E$ . We write it as  $\Phi = \Phi(E)$ .

**Lemma 10.41.** *The Thom isomorphism is given explicitly by*

$$\mathcal{T}\omega = \pi^*\omega \wedge \Phi$$

for  $\omega \in H^p(M)$ .

*Proof.* Using the projection formula and that  $\pi_*\Phi = 1$  we get

$$\pi_*((\pi^*\omega) \wedge \Phi) = \omega \wedge \pi_*\Phi = \omega$$

□

**Proposition 10.42.** *The Thom class  $\Phi$  of a rank- $k$  vector bundle  $E$  can be uniquely characterised as the cohomology class in  $H_{cv}^n(E)$  which restricts to the generator of  $H_c^k(F)$  on each fibre.*

*Proof.* Since  $\pi_*\Phi = 1$ ,  $\Phi|_F$  is a bump form that integrates to 1, and any such  $\Phi$  satisfies

$$\pi_*((\pi^*\omega) \wedge \Phi) = \omega \wedge \pi_*\Phi = \omega$$

□

**Proposition 10.43.** *If we have two oriented vector bundles  $E, F \rightarrow M$  with projections  $\pi_E, \pi_F$  then*

$$\Phi(E \oplus F) = \pi_E^*\Phi(E) \wedge \pi_F^*\Phi(F)$$

*Proof.* Note

$$H_c^{k+l}(\mathbb{R}^k \times \mathbb{R}^l) \cong H_c^k(\mathbb{R}^k) \otimes H_c^l(\mathbb{R}^l)$$

and this isomorphism is given by the wedge products of the generators. □

## 10.6 The Poincaré Dual and Thom Isomorphism.

The concept of Poincaré duality can be extended to the idea of a Poincaré dual:

**Definition 10.44.** *Given  $M$  an  $n$ -dimensional oriented manifold, and  $i : S \hookrightarrow M$  a closed  $k$ -dimensional oriented submanifold, the **(closed) Poincaré dual** to  $S$  is  $[\eta_S] \in H^{n-k}(M)$  given by*

$$\int_S i^*\omega = \int_M \omega \wedge \eta_S$$

for any  $\omega \in H_c^k(M)$ .

Let us unpack this definition: Given such an  $\omega$ ,  $\text{supp}(\omega|_S) = \text{supp}(\omega) \cap S$  is closed and compact, and as pullback and  $d$  commute we know  $\int_S i^*\omega$  indeed exists and is well defined. Then by Poincaré duality the map  $H_c^k(M) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ,  $\omega \mapsto \int_S i^*\omega$  (which is a linear functional) corresponds to a unique element of  $H^{n-k}(M)$ .

We can define the related notion

**Definition 10.45.** Given  $M$  an  $n$ -dimensional oriented manifold, and  $i : S \hookrightarrow M$  a compact  $k$ -dimensional oriented submanifold, the **(compact) Poincaré dual** to  $S$  is  $[\eta'_S] \in H_c^{n-k}(M)$  given by

$$\int_S i^* \omega = \int_M \omega \wedge \eta'_S$$

for any  $\omega \in H^k(M)$ .

**Remark.** As manifolds are Hausdorff, any compact submanifold is also closed. Hence a compact submanifold has both an associated closed Poincaré dual and an associated compact Poincaré dual. These are in general different and so need specifying.

**Example 10.46.** Consider  $M = \mathbb{R}^n$  with compact submanifold  $P = *$ . Note  $H^n(\mathbb{R}^n) = 0$  so  $[\eta_P] = [0]$ . Contrastingly,  $[\eta'_P]$  must generate  $H_c^n(\mathbb{R}^n) \cong \mathbb{R}$ , and as closed 0-forms are constant functions, all we require is that  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \eta'_P = 1$ , which can be achieved by a normalised bump function.

We can now make the following link between a the Poincaré dual and the Thom isomorphism:

**Proposition 10.47.** Let  $M$  be an orientable  $n$ -dimensional manifold, and  $S \subset M$  and orientable  $k$ -dimensional submanifold. Then

$$\eta_S = j_* \Phi(N_S)$$

where  $j : N_S \hookrightarrow M$  is the injection so  $j_*$  is extension of forms by 0.

*Proof.* Consider the diagram

$$H^p(S) \xrightarrow{T} H_{cv}^{p+n-k}(T) \xrightarrow{j_*} H^{p+n-k}(M)$$

where  $T$  is a tubular □

**Corollary 10.48.** If  $E \rightarrow M$  is an oriented vector bundle over an oriented base then

$$\eta_{s_0(M)} = j_* \Phi(E)$$

where  $s_0 : M \rightarrow E$  is the zero section.

**Corollary 10.49** (Localisation Principle). The support of  $\eta_S$  for  $S \subset M$  can be shrunk to any tubular neighbourhood of  $S$ .

*Proof.* Any tubular neighbourhood is diffeomorphic to the normal bundle. □

**Proposition 10.50.** Under Poincaré duality, transversal intersection of oriented submanifolds corresponds to the wedge product of forms, i.e

$$\eta_{R \cap S} = \eta_R \wedge \eta_S$$

*Proof.* If  $R, S$  are oriented submanifolds that intersect transversally, then  $N_{R \cap S} = N_R \oplus N_S$ , and so

$$\begin{aligned}\eta_{R \cap S} &= j_* \Phi(N_{R \cap S}) \\ &= j_* \Phi(N_R \oplus N_S) \\ &= j_* (\pi_R^* \Phi(N_R) \wedge \pi_S^* \Phi(N_S)) \\ &= \eta_R \wedge \eta_S\end{aligned}$$

□

**Proposition 10.51.** *If  $f : N \rightarrow M$  is an orientation-preserving map of oriented manifolds,  $S \subset M$  a closed oriented submanifold s.t.  $f^{-1}(S) \subset N$  is closed, then*

$$\eta_{f^{-1}(S)} = f^* \eta_S$$

*Proof.* Suppose  $\dim S = k$ ,  $\dim M = m$ ,  $\dim N = n$ . Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} H^p(S) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}} & H_{cv}^{p+m-k}(T) & \xrightarrow{j_*} & H^{p+m-k}(M) \\ f^* \downarrow & & f^* \downarrow & & f^* \downarrow \\ H^p(f^{-1}S) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}} & H_{cv}^{p+m-k}(f^{-1}T) & \xrightarrow{j_*} & H^{p+n-k}(N) \end{array}$$

where  $T$  is a tubular neighbourhood of  $S$ . This diagram commutes, and so following the image of the generator 1 in  $H^0(f^{-1}S)$  gives the result. □

## 10.7 Euler Class

We now want to go through the process of calculating a Thom class explicitly. We will start by constructing a generator of  $H_c^n(\mathbb{R}^n)$  from  $H^{n-1}(S^{n-1})$  from:

**Definition 10.52.** *Given an orientation on an  $n$ -dimensional manifold  $M$  specified by  $\omega \in \Omega^n(M)$ ,  $\tau \in \Omega^n(M)$  is called **positive** if  $[\omega] = [\tau] \in H^n(M)$ .*

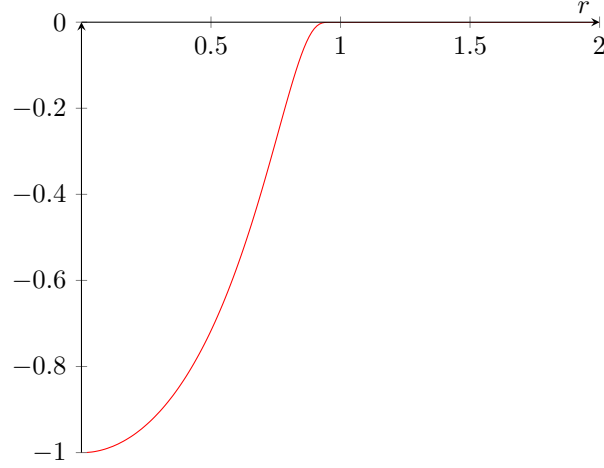
We define positive orientation on  $S^{n-1}$  to be compatible with the standard orientation on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , that is the generator  $[\sigma] \in H^{n-1}(S^{n-1})$  is positive if  $dr \wedge \pi^* \sigma$  is positive on  $\mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$ . Here,  $r$  is the radial coordinate, and  $\pi : \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\} \rightarrow S^{n-1}$  is the deformation retraction onto the sphere along radius.

**Example 10.53.** *If we consider  $S^1$ , then using  $\pi : \mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\} \rightarrow S^1$  we have  $\pi^*(d\theta) = d\theta$ , and as  $dx \wedge dy = r dr \wedge d\theta$ . the form  $d\theta$  is positive giving orientation to  $S^1$ .*

**Definition 10.54.** *Letting  $[\sigma] \in H^{n-1}(S^{n-1})$  be the positive generator, the form  $\psi \in \pi^* \sigma$  is called the **angular form** on  $\mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$ .*

Given the angular form, and a function  $\rho(r)$  s.t  $d\rho = \rho'(r)dr$  is a bump function, integral 1,  $\rho(0) \neq 0$  (we will choose  $\rho(0) = -1$ , see below), then we can take  $[d\rho \wedge \psi]$  as a generator of  $H_c^n(\mathbb{R}^n)$ .





**Remark.** Note we can write

$$d\rho \wedge \psi = d(\rho \wedge \psi)$$

as  $\psi$  is closed, but because  $\rho(0) \neq 0$  this is not a global form so  $d\rho \wedge \psi$  isn't exact.

**Definition 10.55.** Given an oriented rank- $k$  vector bundle over  $M$ , let  $E^0$  be the complement to the zero section. The **global angular form** is global form on  $E_0$  whose restriction to each fibre is that angular form on  $\mathbb{R}^k \setminus \{0\}$

We now specialise to the case of a rank-2 vector bundle  $\pi : E \rightarrow M$  over an  $n$ -dimensional base. Taking an open cover  $\{U_\alpha\}$  of  $M$  with local coordinates  $x_\alpha^1, \dots, x_\alpha^n$  we can take local coordinates on  $E^0$  given by  $r_\alpha, \theta_\alpha, \pi^* x_\alpha^1, \dots, \pi^* x_\alpha^n$ . On  $U_\alpha \cap U_\beta$  define  $\varphi_{\alpha\beta}$  by

$$\theta_\beta = \theta_\alpha + \pi^* \varphi_{\alpha\beta}$$

**Lemma 10.56.** On triple intersections  $U_\alpha \cap U_\beta \cap U_\gamma$

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{\alpha\beta} + \varphi_{\beta\gamma} - \varphi_{\alpha\gamma} &\in 2\pi\mathbb{Z} \\ \Rightarrow d\varphi_{\alpha\beta} + d\varphi_{\beta\gamma} - d\varphi_{\alpha\gamma} &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* This follows immediately from the cocycle condition. □

**Lemma 10.57.**  $\exists \xi_\alpha \in \Omega^1(U_\alpha)$  s.t.

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} d\varphi_{\alpha\beta} = \xi_\beta - \xi_\alpha$$

*Proof.* Take  $\{\rho_\alpha\}$  to be a partition of unity subordinate to  $\{U_\alpha\}$  and let  $\xi_\alpha = -\sum_\gamma \rho_\gamma d\varphi_{\alpha\gamma}$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \xi_\beta - \xi_\alpha &= -\sum_\gamma \rho_\gamma (d\varphi_{\beta\gamma} - d\varphi_{\alpha\gamma}) \\ &= \sum_\gamma \rho_\gamma d\varphi_{\alpha\beta} = d\varphi_{\alpha\beta} \end{aligned}$$

□

**Lemma 10.58.** *The  $d\xi_\alpha$  combine to make a global closed two form  $e = e(E)$  on  $M$  that is not necessarily exact.*

*Proof.* On  $U_\alpha \cap U_\beta$

$$d\xi_\alpha - d\xi_\beta = d(\xi_\alpha - \xi_\beta) = -\frac{1}{2\pi} d^2 \varphi_{\alpha\beta} = 0$$

Closed-ness is clear, as on each patch it is exact, but in general the  $\xi_\alpha$  do not combine to make a global one form.  $\square$

**Definition 10.59.** *The cohomology  $[e] \in H^2(M)$  is called the **Euler class** of the oriented vector bundle  $E$ .*

**Example 10.60.** *The Euler class of the trivial bundle is 0.*

**Proposition 10.61.** *The Euler class does not depend on the choice of  $\xi$  in the definition.*

*Proof.* If  $\{\bar{\xi}\}$  is another such set then  $\bar{\xi}_\alpha - \xi_\alpha$  makes a global one form so the difference in  $e$  is an exact form.  $\square$

**Proposition 10.62.**  $d\psi = -\pi^*e$

**Remark.** *Note that on an oriented rank-2 vector bundle the transition functions can be taken to have values in  $SO(2) \cong U(1)$ .*

**Proposition 10.63.** *We have the formula that*

$$e(E)|_{U_\alpha} = -\frac{1}{2\pi i} \sum_\gamma d(\rho_\gamma d \log g_{\gamma\alpha})$$

**Corollary 10.64.** *The Euler class is functorial, i.e. given  $f : N \rightarrow M$  covered by an orientation preserving map and  $E \rightarrow M$  a rank-2 oriented vector bundle*

$$e(f^*E) = f^*e(E)$$

**Proposition 10.65.**  $\Phi(E) = d(\rho \wedge \psi) = d\rho \wedge \psi - \rho \pi^*e(E)$

**Corollary 10.66.** *The pullback of the Thom class to  $M$  by the zero section is the Euler class*

*Proof.* We explicitly calculate, calling  $s : M \rightarrow E$  the zero section

$$\begin{aligned} s^*\Phi &= d(\rho(0)) \wedge s^*\psi - \rho(0)s^*\pi^*e \\ &= (\pi \circ s)^*e = e \end{aligned}$$

$\square$

**Theorem 10.67** (Gauss-Chern-Bonnet). *We have*

$$\chi(M) = \int_M e(TM)$$

**Proposition 10.68.** *If  $F$  is the curvature 2-form of a connection on  $E \rightarrow M$  then*

$$e(E) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{n/2}} \text{Pfaff}(F)$$

where  $n = \dim M$ .

## 11 Characteristic Classes

We start by recalling a definition:

**Definition 11.1.** A **complex line bundle** is a complex vector bundle of rank 1.

**Remark.** Analogously to how real vector bundles have reduction of structure group  $GL(r, \mathbb{R}) \rightarrow O(r)$ , complex vector bundles have reduction  $GL(r, \mathbb{C}) \rightarrow U(\mathbb{C})$ .

**Lemma 11.2.** There is a bijection between complex line bundles and oriented rank-2 real vector bundles.

*Proof.* Every rank- $r$   $\mathbb{C}$ -vector space  $E$  corresponds to a rank- $2r$   $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space  $E_{\mathbb{R}}$  by forgetting the complex structure. Then as  $U(1) \cong SO(2)$  each complex line bundle in the case  $r = 1$  this is a bijection if we give an orientation to the real bundle, which picks out  $SO(2) \subset O(2)$ .  $\square$

**Definition 11.3.** The **first Chern class** of a complex line bundle  $L$  with base  $M$  is the Euler class of  $L_{\mathbb{R}}$ , that is

$$c_1(L) = e(L_{\mathbb{R}}) \in H^2(M)$$

More generally the Chern class can be given a definition for higher rank vector bundles:

**Definition 11.4.** Let  $E \rightarrow M$  be a rank- $r$  vector bundle with connection  $A$ . Then the **total Chern class** is

$$\begin{aligned} c(E) &= \det \left( 1 + \frac{i}{2\pi} F \right) \\ &= 1 + \frac{i}{2\pi} \text{Tr } F + \dots \\ &= 1 + c_1(E) + \dots \in H^0(M) \oplus H^2(M) \oplus \dots \end{aligned}$$

**Proposition 11.5.** The total Chern class is independent of the choice of connection  $A$ .

There are other ways of viewing Chern classes which will be helpful. First, let  $E \rightarrow M$  be a rank- $r$  vector bundle and let  $s_1, \dots, s_r$  be global sections. We can define

$$D_k = \{x \in M \mid s_1(x) \wedge \dots \wedge s_k(x) = 0\}$$

which will turn out to be a cycle. Then  $D_k$  is the Poincaré dual to  $c_{r-k+1}$ . See p.411-414 of [22]. This gives the following useful result:

**Proposition 11.6.**  $c_1(E) = c_1(\wedge^r E)$

**Remark.** We can come up with a very categorical definition of the Chern classes, which I would like to explain now (glossing over much of the detail). We will need a few ingredients:

- The functor  $\text{Vect}_{n, \mathbb{C}}$  sending spaces to isomorphism classes of complex rank- $n$  vector bundles,
- The functor  $H^\bullet(\cdot, \mathbb{Z})$  sending spaces to their integer-valued singular cohomology ring.

A fact we will need is that  $\text{Vect}_{n, \mathbb{C}}$  is a representable functor:

- rank- $n$  vector bundles over  $X$  are principal  $GL_n(\mathbb{C})$  bundles over  $X$ , and as such are classified by homotopy classes of maps  $X \rightarrow BGL_n(\mathbb{C})$ . It is known that  $BGL_n(\mathbb{C}) = Gr_n(\mathbb{C}^\infty)$ .

It is actually a general fact that homotopy classes of maps  $X \rightarrow K(G, n)$  are in bijection with  $H^n(X, G)$ , where  $K(G, n)$  is an Eilenberg-MacLane space, so our second functor is also representable, but we will not want to use this.

The Yoneda lemma then says that to give a Chern class - i.e. a natural map  $c : \text{Vect}_{n, \mathbb{C}}(X) \rightarrow H^\bullet(X, \mathbb{Z})$  - is equivalent to giving an element of the cohomology ring  $H^\bullet(Gr_n(\mathbb{C}^\infty), \mathbb{Z})$ . If we require the map  $c$  to obey the axioms

- $c = 1$  on the trivial bundle
- $c$  takes values only in  $H^{2k}$ ,  $k \leq n$  on rank- $n$  bundles
- for vector bundles  $E, E'$ ,  $c(E \oplus E') = c(E)c(E')$
- $c \in H^2(\mathbb{CP}^1, \mathbb{Z})$  is a generator for the tautological line bundle.

then it turns out the Chern class is fully determined. To see more see §3.5.1 of [28].

**Proposition 11.7.** If  $0 \rightarrow A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow 0$  is a SES of sheaves then  $c(A)c(C) = c(B)$ .

There are other characteristic classes we can build from the Chern class:

**Definition 11.8.** Suppose  $c(E) = \prod_{i=1}^r (1 + x_i)$ . Then the **Chern character** is

$$ch(E) = \sum_{i=1}^r e^{x_i} = r + c_1 + \frac{1}{2}(c_1^2 - 2c_2) + \dots$$

**Proposition 11.9.** The Chern character obeys

- $ch(E \oplus F) = ch(E) + ch(F)$
- $ch(E \otimes F) = ch(E)ch(F)$

**Definition 11.10.** Suppose  $c(E) = \prod_{i=1}^r (1 + x_i)$ . Then the **Todd class** is

$$td(E) = \prod_{i=1}^r \frac{x_i}{1 - e^{-x_i}} = 1 + \frac{1}{2}c_2 + \frac{1}{12}(c_1^2 + c_2) + \dots$$

**Proposition 11.11.**  $td(E \oplus F) = td(E)td(F)$ .

**Remark.** Occasionally the notation will be used  $td(TM) = td(M)$ .

**Theorem 11.12** (Hirzebruch-Riemann-Roch). We have

$$\chi(E) = \int_M ch(E) \wedge td(TM)$$

## 12 Understanding Manifolds

### 12.1 Bundle Theory

#### 12.1.1 Dual Bundles

**Definition 12.1.** The **dual bundle** of a vector bundle  $E \rightarrow M$  is  $E^* \rightarrow M$  where the fibres of  $E^*$  are the dual spaces of the fibres of  $E$ , with the transition functions  $g_{ij}^* = (g_{ij}^T)^{-1}$ .

**Remark.** We can check the cocycle condition here as

$$g_{kj}^* g_{ji}^* = (g_{kj}^T)^{-1} (g_{ji}^T)^{-1} = (g_{ji}^T g_{kj}^T)^{-1} = ([g_{kj} g_{ji}]^T)^{-1} = (g_{ki}^T)^{-1} = g_{ki}^*$$

**Example 12.2.** The dual bundle to the tangent bundle is the cotangent bundle, i.e.  $(TM)^* = T^*M$

**Proposition 12.3.** If  $E \rightarrow X$  is a real vector bundle,  $E^* = \text{Hom}(E, \mathbb{R} \times X)$ .

**Remark.** A like result exists for complex vector bundles.

**Corollary 12.4.** The map  $E \rightarrow E^*$  is a contravariant functor.

**Lemma 12.5.**  $E \otimes E^* \cong \text{End}(E)$ .

**Lemma 12.6.** Line bundles have tensor inverses, i.e given  $L$ ,  $\exists L^{-1}$  s.t.  $L \otimes L^{-1} \cong O$  the trivial bundle.

*Proof.* We will show this by showing  $L^{-1} = L^*$ . To trivialise  $\text{End}(L)$  we note here the transition maps are  $g_{ij} \otimes g_{ij}^{-1} = 1 \otimes 1$  as  $g_{ij}, g_{ij}^* \in \mathbb{F}$ . Hence any section is globally defined.  $\square$

**Remark.** *Why is the identity section not global on any other vector bundle.*

If  $E$  is a complex vector bundle, we have an additional construction.

**Definition 12.7.** The **conjugate bundle** of a vector bundle  $E \rightarrow M$  is  $\overline{E} \rightarrow M$  where the fibres are the complex conjugate and the transition functions are  $\overline{g_{ij}}$ .

**Proposition 12.8.** If  $E$  has a positive definite Hermitian inner product, then  $\overline{E} \cong E^*$ .

#### 12.1.2 Pullbacks

**Definition 12.9.** Given manifolds  $M, N$ , fibre bundle  $E \rightarrow M$ , and map  $f : N \rightarrow M$ , we define the **pullback bundle of  $E$  by  $f$**  to be

$$f^*E \equiv \{(n, e) \mid f(n) = \pi(e)\} \subset N \times E$$

the bundle with base  $N$ , with the natural projection onto the first component  $p_1$ .

**Lemma 12.10.** The pullback bundle is the unique maximal subset of  $N \times E$  s.t.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} f^*E & \xrightarrow{p_2} & E \\ p_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi \\ N & \xrightarrow{f} & M \end{array}$$

commutes.

**Exercise 12.11.** Look at how this relates to the categorical concept of a pullback.

**Example 12.12.** The pullback by the identity map is isomorphic to the bundle itself, i.e.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{id}^* E &\leftrightarrow E \\ (\pi(e), e) &\leftrightarrow e\end{aligned}$$

**Proposition 12.13.** If  $\{g_{\alpha\beta}\}$  are the transition functions for  $E \rightarrow M$  wrt to the cover  $\{U_\alpha\}$  of  $M$ , then  $\{f^*g_{\alpha\beta} = g_{\alpha\beta} \circ f\}$  are the transition functions for  $f^*E \rightarrow N$  wrt to the cover  $\{f^{-1}U_\alpha\}$ . Moreover, given a local section of  $E$ ,  $s : U \rightarrow E$ , we get a section of  $f^*E$  given by

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{s} : f^{-1}(U) &\rightarrow f^*E \\ n &\mapsto (n, s(f(n)))\end{aligned}$$

**Corollary 12.14.** The pullback of an oriented vector bundle is oriented.

**Lemma 12.15.** Given  $g : M'' \rightarrow M'$ ,  $f : M' \rightarrow M$ ,  $(f \circ g)^*E = g^*(f^*E)$ .

**Lemma 12.16.** The pullback of a trivial bundle is trivial. i.e. If  $E = F \times M$ , then for  $f : N \rightarrow M$ ,  $f^*E = N \times F$ .

**Remark.** If we let  $\text{Vect}_k(M)$  be the isomorphism classes of rank- $k$  real vector bundles, and  $\text{Vect}_k(f) = f^*$  be the pullback of vector bundles along  $f$ , then we get a contravariant functor from manifolds with smooth maps to pointed sets with basepoint preserving maps, where the basepoint of  $\text{Vect}_k(M)$  is the trivial bundle over  $M$ .

**Proposition 12.17.** If  $f, g : M \rightarrow N$  are homotopic then  $f^*E$  and  $g^*E$  are isomorphic.

**Remark.** This result holds true more generally for a paracompact topological space  $M$ . As all manifolds are paracompact, this holds in our case.

**Corollary 12.18.** A bundle with contractible base is trivial.

*Proof.* Suppose we have

$$M \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{f} \\ \xleftarrow{g} \end{array} *$$

s.t.  $g \circ f$  is homotopic to  $\text{id}_M$ . Then

$$E \cong (g \circ f)^*E = f^*(g^*E)$$

As  $g^*E$  is a bundle over a point it is necessarily trivial, and so  $f^*(g^*E)$  is also.  $\square$

**Example 12.19.** We want to work out  $\text{Vect}_k(S^1)$ . Intuition might tell us that  $\text{Vect}_1(S^1) = \mathbb{Z}$  (number of twists of a Möbius-like band, where 0 is the trivial bundle) so we have a starting point. This will not turn out to be the case.

To specify a isomorphism class of rank  $k$ -vector bundles, we can take the cover of  $S^1$  with only two open sets and then an element of  $\text{Vect}_k(S^1)$  is specified by two elements  $g, h \in GL(k, \mathbb{R})$  up to conjugation. We can use a reduction of structure bundle to only ask about elements of  $O(k)$ .

**Definition 12.20.** Let  $X$  be an algebraic surface and  $\pi : L \rightarrow X$  a line bundle. Then the **tautological section** of  $\pi^*L$  as a bundle over  $L$  is given by  $\sigma(l) = (l, l)$ .

**Remark.** Not that the tautological section is indeed valid as we have

$$\pi^*L = \{(l, l') \in L \times L \mid \pi(l) = \pi(l')\}$$

so certainly  $(l, l) \in \pi^*L$ .

### 12.1.3 Tubular Neighbourhoods

**Definition 12.21.** Given  $S \subset M$  a  $k$ -dimensional submanifold of an oriented  $n$ -dimensional manifold  $M$ , a **tubular neighbourhood** of  $S$  in  $M$  is  $U$  an open neighbourhood of  $S$  in  $M$  diffeomorphic to a rank- $(n - k)$  vector bundle over  $S$ .

**Example 12.22.** The 'namesake' example is when  $S$  is a line in  $M = \mathbb{R}^3$ , then we can attach an open disk to each point on  $S$  so the disk is normal to  $S$ . The union of these disks forms a 'tube' whose centre line is  $S$ .

**Definition 12.23.** Given  $S \subset M$  a submanifold, the **normal bundle** of  $S$  in  $M$  is  $N = N_{S/M}$  defined by the exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow TS \rightarrow TM|_S \rightarrow N \rightarrow 0$$

We may also notate the normal bundle as  $T^\perp S$ .

**Example 12.24.** The normal bundle to the bases of a vector bundle (injected via the zero section) is the bundle itself.

**Theorem 12.25.** Every submanifold has a tubular neighbourhood  $T$  and  $T$  is diffeomorphic to the normal bundle.

We can give every real vector bundle  $E \rightarrow M$  a Riemannian metric as follows: Let  $\{U_\alpha\}$  be an open cover of  $M$  which trivialises  $E$ , on each  $U_\alpha$  choose a frame of  $E|_{U_\alpha}$  and declare it to be orthonormal (giving a Riemannian metric  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_\alpha$  here) and then given a partition of unity subordinate to  $U_\alpha$ , take

$$\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle = \sum_\alpha \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_\alpha$$

### 12.1.4 Projective Bundles

We will now briefly discuss the way to compactify line bundles, as discussed here and here. We start by recalling a definition.

**Definition 12.26.** Given a  $\mathbb{F}$ -vector space  $V$ , the space  $\mathbb{P}(V)$  is the space of equivalence class of  $V \setminus \{0\}$  under the equivalence relation  $\forall x \in V, \lambda \in \mathbb{F}^\times, x \sim \lambda x$ .

Hence from any vector bundle we can construct an another fibre bundle.

**Definition 12.27.** Given a vector bundle  $E$ , the corresponding projective bundle is  $\mathbb{P}(E)$ , the bundle with fibres  $\mathbb{P}(E)_z = \mathbb{P}(E_z)$ .

**Remark.** This is a special case of the Grassmannian bundle, unsurprisingly.

We have the following characteristic property.

**Proposition 12.28.** Given a vector bundle  $E \rightarrow X$  and a morphism  $f : Y \rightarrow X$ , to factorise  $f$  through the projection map  $p : \mathbb{P}(E) \rightarrow X$  is to specify line subbundle of  $f^*E$ .

*Proof.* See [26], prop 7.12, as well as nlab and the general Wikipedia page on the Proj construction.  $\square$

**Definition 12.29.** The *Segre embedding* is the map  $\sigma : \mathbb{P}^n \times \mathbb{P}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^{(n+1)(m+1)-1}$  given by

$$([X_0 : \cdots : X_n], [Y_0 : \cdots : Y_m]) \mapsto [X_0 Y_0 : \cdots : X_i Y_j : \cdots : X_n Y_m]$$

**Proposition 12.30.** This map is an isomorphism if either  $n = 0$  or  $m = 0$

*Proof.* Checking dimensions we have

$$\begin{aligned} \dim(\mathbb{P}^n \times \mathbb{P}^m) &= n + m, \\ \dim(\mathbb{P}^{(n+1)(m+1)-1}) &= nm + n + m. \end{aligned}$$

$\square$

**Corollary 12.31.** The projective bundle is stable under twisting by a line bundle, i.e.  $\mathbb{P}(E) \cong \mathbb{P}(E \otimes L)$ .

Now recall the standard way to projectivise (i.e. compactify) the vector space  $\mathbb{F}^n$  is to consider

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{F}^n &\hookrightarrow \mathbb{P}\mathbb{F}^n \\ (z_1, \dots, z_n) &\mapsto [z_1 : \cdots : z_n : 1] \end{aligned}$$

**Example 12.32.** This is how we construct  $\mathbb{CP}^n$  recall, and how we compactify  $\mathbb{C}$  to  $\mathbb{P}^1$ .

Now for any rank- $n$ ,  $\mathbb{F}$ -vector space  $V$  we projectivise as

$$\begin{aligned} V &\hookrightarrow \mathbb{P}(V \oplus \mathbb{F}) \\ v &\mapsto [(v, 1)] \end{aligned}$$

Combining this with the definition of projectivisation of a vector bundle, we now get a compactification

$$E \hookrightarrow \mathbb{P}(E \oplus O)$$

where  $O$  is the trivial rank-1 vector bundle  $X \times \mathbb{F}$ . In this sense studying projective bundles is useful as we can enforce the compactness property on a bundle we have. Projective bundles carry a tautological bundle themselves.

**Definition 12.33.** Take a bundle  $\pi : E \rightarrow X$ , then the *tautological bundle* over  $\mathbb{P}(E)$  is given by  $H$  whose dual is the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H^* = \pi^* \mathbb{P}(E) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{P}(E) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ E & \xrightarrow{\pi} & X \end{array}$$



## 12.2 Splitting Principle

**Theorem 12.34** (Splitting Principle). *Let  $E \rightarrow X$  be a rank- $n$  vector bundle,  $X$  paracompact. Then  $\exists Y = \text{Fl}(E)$  (the **flag bundle** associated to  $E$ ) and map  $p : Y \rightarrow X$  s.t.*

- the induced cohomology homomorphism  $p^* : H^\bullet(X) \rightarrow H^\bullet(Y)$  is injective, and
- the pullback bundle is a direct sum on line bundle, i.e.

$$p^*E = L_1 \oplus \cdots \oplus L_n.$$

The power of this theorem is that an equation holding in  $H^\bullet(Y)$  holds in  $H^\bullet(X)$ , for example the following prop.

**Proposition 12.35.**  $c_1(E) = c_1(\det E)$ .

*Proof.* By the splitting principle it is sufficient to show it in the case of  $E$  being a direct sum of line bundles.  $\square$

There is a stronger theorem if we give constraints to our bundle.

**Theorem 12.36** (Grothendieck-Birkhoff). *Every holomorphic rank- $n$  vector bundle  $E \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^1$  is holomorphically isomorphic to a direct sum of line bundles, i.e.*

$$E \cong \mathcal{O}(a_1) \oplus \cdots \mathcal{O}(a_n).$$

Moreover the  $a_i$  are unique up to reordering.

*Proof.* See *Sur la classification des fibrés holomorphes sur la sphère de Riemann*, Grothendieck 1957.  $\square$

## 12.3 Serre Duality

This section is not currently in a sensible position - find a better place for it.

We will now state a sheaf cohomology analogue of Poincaré duality:

**Theorem 12.37** (Serre Duality). *Let  $E \rightarrow X$  be an algebraic vector bundle over  $n$ -dimensional (proper) smooth variety. Then*

$$H^k(E) \cong H^{n-k}(E^* \otimes K_X)^*$$

naturally.

This is currently an abstract isomorphism, which we will make more concrete in the case where  $X$  is a compact ( $n$ -dimensional) complex manifold and  $E$  is holomorphic. This exposition comes from here and [29].

The Hodge star operator acts in this case as

$$\star : \Omega^{p,q}(X) \xrightarrow{\cong} \Omega^{n-q,n-p}(X),$$

(note the change in the holomorphic and anti-holomorphic indices) and so

$$\bar{\star} : \Omega^{p,q}(X) \xrightarrow{\cong} \Omega^{n-p,n-q}(X),$$

where we have defined  $\bar{\star}\omega = \star\bar{\omega}$ . This gives us a pairing of  $(p, q)$  form by

$$\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle = \int_X \alpha \wedge \bar{\star}\beta.$$

**Remark.** This pairing is familiar to use in the case of real manifolds from gauge theory.

Now if  $(E, h)$  is a Hermitian holomorphic vector bundle, then the metric  $h$  gives an antilinear isomorphism  $\tau : E \rightarrow E^*$ . We then get an antilinear isomorphism

$$\bar{\star}_E : \Omega^{p,q}(X, E) \xrightarrow{\cong} \Omega^{n-p, n-q}(X, E^*)$$

where  $\Omega^{p,q}(X, E) = \Omega^{p,q}(X) \otimes \Gamma(E)$  and  $\bar{\star}_E(\omega \otimes s) = (\bar{\star}\omega) \otimes \tau(s)$ .

It can be shown that this descends to an isomorphism of the Dolbeault cohomology, so combining with the dualising operation we have a linear isomorphism  $H_{\bar{\partial}}^{p,q}(X, E) \cong H_{\bar{\partial}}^{n-p, n-q}(X, E^*)^*$ .

**Remark.** Standard Dolbeault cohomology  $H_{\bar{\partial}}^{p,q}(X)$  is the cohomology coming from the chain complex of  $\Omega^{p,q}(X)$  with differential  $\bar{\partial}$ . The extension of this to  $H_{\bar{\partial}}^{p,q}(X, E)$  uses  $\Omega^{p,q}(X, E)$  with now the **Dolbeault operator**  $\bar{\partial}_E$  which just acts as  $\bar{\partial}$  in each basis direction of the fibre locally (i.e. once a local frame has been chosen). For more see here.

We then need the following result.

**Theorem 12.38** (Dolbeault's Theorem).  $H_{\bar{\partial}}^{p,q}(X, E) \cong H^q(X, \Omega^p \otimes E)$ , where  $\Omega^p$  is the sheaf of holomorphic  $p$ -forms on  $X$ , and the rhs cohomology is sheaf cohomology.

**Remark.** This can be viewed as a complex analogue of de Rham's theorem. Note that this makes sense, as holomorphic form will go to zero under  $\bar{\partial}$ , so from the perspective of cohomology they look like coefficients.

**Remark.** This needs reorganising so we do not discuss sheaves and sheaf cohomology before we have defined it. Moreover, we probably want a section for Dolbeault cohomology and Hodge theory on its own.

As a result, we can express Serre duality in this case as the chain of isomorphisms

$$H^q(X, E) \cong H_{\bar{\partial}}^{0,q}(X, E) \cong H_{\bar{\partial}}^{n, n-q}(X, E^*)^* \cong H^{n-q}(X, K_X \otimes E^*)^*.$$

**Example 12.39.** Take a 1d complex manifold (e.g a Riemann surface) and take  $E$  to be the trivial bundle. Then we should have

$$H^1(X, \mathcal{O})^* \cong H_{\bar{\partial}}^{0,1}(X)^* \cong H_{\bar{\partial}}^{1,0}(X) \cong H^0(X, K_X).$$

An element of  $H^0(X, K_X)$  is a global section of the canonical bundle, given by a holomorphic one form  $\omega = w(x)dx$ , where  $x$  is the complex coordinate on  $X$ . For a genus  $g$  hyperelliptic curve of the form  $y^2 = \dots$  we can take  $w = \frac{x^k}{y}$  for  $0 \leq k \leq g-1$ . Now  $\omega \in H_{\bar{\partial}}^{1,0}$  gives the element  $\bar{\star}\omega \in H_{\bar{\partial}}^{1,0}$ . We can check

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\star}dx &= \overline{\star(du + idv)} = (dv) + (-i)(-du) = id\bar{x}, \\ \Rightarrow \bar{\star}\omega &= i\overline{w(x)}d\bar{x}. \end{aligned}$$

We can view the pairing in two ways. Firstly, from a Dolbeault cohomology perspective, we have the map

$$\int_X : H_{\bar{\partial}}^{1,1}(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}.$$

This turns into a map  $\check{H}^1(X, K_X) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  as a integral  $dz$  over all 1-simplices in  $X$ .

We can derive this map (called the **trace morphism** in general) for  $\mathbb{P}^1$  explicitly. Here taking  $U_i$  to be the standard cover we have the SES

$$0 \rightarrow \Omega(U_0) \times \Omega(U_1) \xrightarrow{\delta} \Omega(U_0 \cap U_1) \rightarrow 0$$

as the Čech complex. Elements of  $\Omega(U_0 \cap U_1)$  are of the form  $f(z)dz$  where  $f$  is a Laurent polynomial.  $\Omega(U_0)$  is spanned by terms  $z^n dz$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $\Omega(U_1)$  is spanned by terms  $(z^{-1})^n d(z^{-1}) = -z^{-n-2} dz$  for  $n \geq 0$ , and so  $H^1(\mathbb{P}^1, \Omega_{\mathbb{P}^1})$  has basis  $z^{-1} dz$ . The obvious  $H^1(\mathbb{P}^1, K_{\mathbb{P}^1}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is then reading off the coefficient of this terms, which corresponds to taking the residue at 0, i.e. doing the line integral around the equator. For more see [50] §30.1.

### 12.3.1 Serre Duality for Riemann Surfaces

We can also given an interpretation of Serre duality directly (i.e not via Dolbeault cohomology) when  $X$  is a Riemann surface. This comes from Vakil's 'Baby Algebraic Geometry Seminar' [49].

**Definition 12.40.** A **repartition** (or **adele**) is an indexed set  $\{r_P\}_{P \in X}$  s.t.  $\forall P, r_P \in K(X)$ , and moreover for all but finitely many  $P, r_P \in O_{X,P}$ . We denote the ring of all repartitions as  $R$  when it is clear, which is a  $K(X)$ -algebra.

Further, given a divisor  $D$  we define the additive subgroup

$$R(D) = \{\text{ord}_P(r_P) + \text{ord}_P(D) \geq 0\}.$$

**Proposition 12.41.**  $D \leq D' \Rightarrow R(D) \hookrightarrow R(D')$ .

*Proof.* Suppose  $\text{ord}_P(r_P) \geq -\text{ord}_P(D)$ .  $\text{ord}_P(D) \leq \text{ord}_P(D') \Rightarrow -\text{ord}_P(D) \geq -\text{ord}_P(D')$  and so by transitivity done.  $\square$

**Proposition 12.42.**  $H^1(X, O_X(D)) \cong R / (R(D) + K(X))$ .

*Proof.* The following proof is from Serre's *Groupes algébriques et corps de classes* (ref), reproduced in [49] and [3].

Let  $\underline{K(X)}$  be the corresponding constant sheaf. There's a natural injection  $O_X(D) \hookrightarrow \underline{K(X)}$ . Letting  $S$  be the cokernel of this map gives the SES

$$0 \rightarrow O_X(D) \rightarrow \underline{K(X)} \rightarrow S \rightarrow 0,$$

and so the LES of cohomology

$$K(X) = H^0(X, \underline{K(X)}) \rightarrow H^0(X, S) \rightarrow H^1(X, O_X(D)) \rightarrow H^1(X, \underline{K(X)}) = 0.$$

To complete the proof it is necessary to show  $H^0(X, S) \cong R / R(D)$ . The stalk  $S_P$  is the quotient of the stalk at  $P$  of  $\underline{K(X)}$  and  $O_X(D)$ , i.e. it is  $K(X)$  mod functions whose order at  $P$  is  $\geq -\text{ord}_P(D)$ .

By its definition we then see  $R/\mathcal{R}(D) = \bigoplus_P S_P$  (recall direct sum requires that only finitely many terms aren't zero).

We next want to show  $S = \bigoplus_P T_P$ , where  $T_P$  is the skyscraper sheaf at  $P$  with values in  $S_P$ . To show the sheaves are equal it is sufficient to show that they have the same local sections on a basis of the topology of the base, so we need to show that sections of  $S$  are 0 almost everywhere except for finitely many  $P$ , where they take values in  $S_P$ . Given a section  $s \in S(U)$  for  $U$  an open neighbourhood of  $P$ , it locally lifts to a section  $s'$  of  $\mathcal{K}(X)$ . Because  $\mathcal{K}(X)$  is the constant sheaf, the lift  $s'$  takes the value of a constant function  $f \in \mathcal{K}(X)$  on  $U$ . We define  $U' \subset U$  to be a smaller open subset containing  $P$  disjoint to  $(\text{supp}(D) \cup f^{-1}(\infty)) \setminus \{P\}$  (which we may do as both  $\text{supp}(D)$  and  $s^{-1}(\infty)$  are discrete), and  $f|_{U'}$  is regular (except perhaps at  $P$ , but in that case the order is determined by the stalk) so  $\exists g \in (O_C(D))(U')$  s.t.  $g = f|_{U'}$ . Hence we know  $s|_{U' \setminus \{P\}} = 0$  (by taking the quotient again) and hence  $S$  agrees with  $T_P$  on  $U$ .

As a result we have

$$\begin{aligned} H^0(X, S) &= H^0(X, \bigoplus_P T_P) = \bigoplus_P H^0(X, T_P), \\ &= \bigoplus_P H^0(X, i_{P,*} S_P), \\ &= \bigoplus_P H^0(\{P\}, S_P), \\ &= \bigoplus_P S_P. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Remark.** Looking later to theorem 18.52, we can see there is a clear relation between Serre duality here and Riemann-Roch. Indeed this is a possible avenue for proof.

Once we have this result, we make a pairing

$$\begin{aligned} H^1(X, O_X) \times H^0(X, K_X) &\rightarrow \mathbb{C}, \\ (\{r_P\}, \omega) &\mapsto \sum_P \text{res}_P(r_P \omega). \end{aligned}$$

In [42], Miranda will cover the same construction, but not make explicit it's link to Serre duality. To do so he makes the following definition.

**Definition 12.43.** A **Laurent tail divisor** is a finite formal sum  $\sum_P r_P \cdot P$  where  $P \in X$  and  $r_P$  is a Laurent polynomial in local coordinate  $z_P$  about  $P$ . We denote the group of Laurent tails under addition (which is also a  $K(X)$  algebra) as  $\mathcal{T}(X)$ .

Further, given a divisor  $D$  we define the subgroup

$$\mathcal{T}[D](X) = \{\forall P \text{ s.t. } r_P \neq 0, \text{ top term of } r_P \text{ has degree } < -\text{ord}_P(D)\}.$$

**Proposition 12.44.**  $D \leq D' \Rightarrow \mathcal{T}[D](X) \twoheadrightarrow \mathcal{T}[D'](X)$ .

*Proof.* Suppose top term of  $r_P$  has degree  $< -\text{ord}_P(D')$ .  $\text{ord}_P(D) \leq \text{ord}_P(D') \Rightarrow -\text{ord}_P(D) \geq -\text{ord}_P(D')$  and so by transitivity done. □

For each divisor  $D$  here is a map  $K(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{T}[D](X)$  given by truncating the Laurent series of a meromorphic function to the right degree at each  $P$ . Miranda then defines a space  $H^1(D)$  to be the cokernel of this map. We want to find  $H^1(D) = H^1(X, \mathcal{O}_X(D))$ , for which we need the following result.

**Lemma 12.45.**  $\mathcal{T}[D](X) \cong R/R(D)$ .

*Proof.* We note first that this is well motivated, as  $D \leq D' \Rightarrow R(D) \hookrightarrow R(D') \Rightarrow R/R(D) \twoheadrightarrow R/R(D')$ . The proof is then simple, as we note the coefficient of  $P$  in  $\mathcal{T}[D](X)$  must lie in  $S_P$ , and then finite sums correspond to  $\bigoplus_P S_P$ .  $\square$

**Remark.** *To see more of the proof of Serre duality and Riemann Roch in this language, see chapter VI of [42].*

## 12.4 Adjunction Formula

Given a codim-1 submanifold  $Y \subset X$  recall we have the SES

$$0 \rightarrow TY \rightarrow TX|_Y \rightarrow N_{Y/X} \rightarrow 0$$

where  $N_{Y/X}$  is the normal bundle to  $Y$ . Taking tensor powers with this gives the following result:

**Theorem 12.46.** *As an isomorphism of line bundles we have*

$$K_Y \cong K_X|_Y \otimes \mathcal{O}_X(Y)|_Y$$

*This implies that as an equation of divisors we have*

$$\deg K_Y = \deg [(K_X + [Y]) \cdot [Y]]$$

*where  $[Y]$  is the divisor corresponding to the line bundle  $\mathcal{O}_X(Y)$  and we are taking the intersection.*

*Proof.* See (for also a larger discussion on the Chow ring) here. Recall  $\mathcal{O}_X(Y) \cong N_{Y/X}$ .  $\square$

## 12.5 Classification of Bundles

### 12.5.1 Universal Bundle and Classifying Space

**Proposition 12.47.** *If  $G$  is an abelian group then  $\text{Prin}_G(X) \cong H^1(X, G)$ .*

*Proof.* See here. Effectively, a choice of bundle is equivalent to a choice of transition maps that obey cocycle transitions, that is a choice of Čech 1-cocycle, valued in  $G$ . The abelian-ness of  $G$  is required to preserve the group operation.  $\square$

**Example 12.48.** *See here for an example of classifying real vector bundle over the torus.*

## 12.6 Almost Complex Manifolds

**Definition 12.49.** Given an even-dimensional smooth manifold, an **almost complex structure** is a fibrewise operator  $J : TM \rightarrow TM$  s.t.  $J^2 = -1$ .

**Theorem 12.50.** A manifold has an almost complex structure iff it admits a reduction of structure group  $GL(2n, \mathbb{R}) \rightarrow GL(n, \mathbb{C})$ .

**Proposition 12.51.** Every complex manifold has an almost complex structure

*Proof.* Take the map  $J \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, J \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \right) = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}$  □

Given a complex manifold  $M$ , the complex structure extends to the complexified tangent bundle as

$$\begin{aligned} J : TM \otimes \mathbb{C} &\rightarrow TM \otimes \mathbb{C} \\ J(X + iY) &= J(X) + iJ(Y) \end{aligned}$$

**Definition 12.52.** The  $\pm i$  eigenspaces of the complexified tangent bundle  $TM \otimes \mathbb{C}$  are denoted  $T^{1,0}M, T^{0,1}M$  respectively, and are called the **holomorphic and antiholomorphic tangent bundles**

**Lemma 12.53.**  $T_p^{0,1}(M) = \overline{T_p^{1,0}(M)}$

## 12.7 Orientability

Given a connected  $n$ -dimensional Riemannian manifold  $X$ , consider an  $O(n)$ -bundle  $E \rightarrow X$ . We know examples of such bundles always exist, for example taking the tangent bundle  $TX$ .

**Definition 12.54.** A manifold is **orientable** if its tangent bundle has a reduction of structure group to an  $SO(n)$  bundle.

We are about to give a topological condition for orientability, and we will need the following result:

**Proposition 12.55.**  $X$  is orientable iff  $w_1(X) = 0$ .

*Proof.* Let  $E$  be the orthonormal frame bundle of the tangent bundle to  $X$ , and then from the maps  $O(n) \rightarrow E \rightarrow X$  we get the exact sequence of cohomology

$$0 \rightarrow H^0(X, F_2) \rightarrow H^0(E, F_2) \rightarrow H^0(O(n), F_2) \xrightarrow{\delta} H^1(X, F_2)$$

See Lawson p.79 for the rest of this - how does it work? □

## 12.8 Spin Bundles

To learn more about spin bundles I recommend reading Besse (ref) and Lawson (ref), but I will give a brief outline here.

**Definition 12.56.** We define  $Spin_n$  be the non-trivial double cover of  $SO(n)$  s.t we have the SES of multiplicative groups

$$1 \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_2 \rightarrow Spin_n \xrightarrow{\pi} SO(n) \rightarrow 1$$

**Example 12.57.**  $Spin_2 = SO(2)$  with the covering map corresponding to squaring when we view  $SO(2) \cong U(1)$ .

**Lemma 12.58.** If  $n > 2$ ,  $\pi_1(SO(n)) = \mathbb{Z}_2$ .

**Proposition 12.59.** When  $n > 2$ ,  $Spin_n$  is the universal cover of  $SO(n)$ .

**Remark.** One can ask questions about how the spin group depends on the metric provided. We will not tackle this here.

**Definition 12.60.** A **spin structure** on  $SO(n)$ -bundle  $P \rightarrow X$  is a double cover  $Q \rightarrow P$  s.t the restriction to each fibre is the double cover  $Spin_n \rightarrow SO(n)$ . That is that the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q \times Spin_n & \longrightarrow & Q \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ P \times SO(n) & \longrightarrow & P \end{array}$$

The existence of such a structure is not guaranteed, but can be given as a simple topological condition. Note that to have an  $SO(n)$ -bundle,  $X$  must already be orientable.

**Proposition 12.61.**  $X$  has a spin structure iff the second Stiefel-Whitney class  $w_2(X) = 0$ .

*Proof.* We have the exact sequence of cohomology

$$0 \rightarrow H^1(X, F_2) \rightarrow H^1(P, F_2) \rightarrow H^1(SO(n), F_2) \xrightarrow{\delta} H^2(X, F_2)$$

coming from  $SO(n) \rightarrow P \rightarrow X$ , where we have the left 0 because  $X$  is orientable.  $\text{Prin}_{F_2}(SO(n)) \cong H^1(SO(n), F_2)$ , so there is a **non-identity** cohomology class  $g \in H^1(SO(n), F_2)$  corresponding to the spin group fibration, and similarly a spin structure corresponds to an element of  $H^1(P, F_2)$  which maps to  $g$  in  $H^1(SO(n), F_2)$ . If  $H^1(P, F_2) = 0$ , then  $\ker \delta = 0$  and so  $\delta(g) \neq 0$ . Conversely, if  $\delta(g) \neq 0$ , by exactness  $g$  is not in the image of the map, and so there cannot be any double covers compatible with the map  $Spin_n \rightarrow SO(n)$ .  $\delta(g)$  is precisely the Stiefel-Whitney class.  $\square$

**Corollary 12.62.** If  $w_2(X) = 0$ , the spin structures on  $X$  correspond to cosets of  $H^1(P, F_2)/H^1(X, F_2)$ .

## 12.9 Calabi-Yau Manifolds

**Definition 12.63.** A **Calabi-Yau (CY) manifold** is one where  $c_1(TM) = 0$  (this is called the **Calabi-Yau condition**).

**Proposition 12.64.** The Calabi-Yau condition can be rephrased as  $K_M$  is the trivial bundle.

*Proof.* The canonical bundle is the determinant line bundle (highest antisymmetric tensor product) of the holomorphic cotangent bundle, and  $c_1(TM) = c_1(\wedge^n TM) = c_1(K_M^*) = -c_1(K_M)$  for  $n$ -dimensional  $M$ .  $\square$

Take a metric and the corresponding Levi-Civita connection on  $M$ . The condition  $c_1(TM) = 0 \Rightarrow [\text{Tr } R] = 0$  as a cohomology class, where  $R$  is the Ricci tensor. Now for superstring theory and mirror symmetry we will want to get metric with  $SU(n)$  holonomy. If a metric had  $U(n)$  holonomy and  $\text{Tr } R = 0$  *pointwise*, then we would get  $SU(n)$  holonomy for free.

**Lemma 12.65.** *If a metric is Kähler, the holonomy is  $U(n)$ .*

*Proof.* I need to write notes on Kähler geometry. □

Hence we ask the question, given a Calabi-Yau manifold with choice of complex structure, is there a Kähler metric s.t.  $\text{Tr } R = 0$ ? This is answered by the following theorem:

**Theorem 12.66** (Calabi, Yau). *There exists such a metric unique up to scaling.*

**Corollary 12.67.** *On a CY manifold the moduli space of complex structures is equivalent to moduli space of Ricci-flat Kähler metrics.*

**Idea.** *Understanding the space of these metrics is hard, but the space of complex structures is slightly easier.*

## 12.10 Classification through Holonomy

## 13 Sheaves

### 13.1 Definitions

**Definition 13.1.** *Given a topological space  $X$ , and category  $C$ , a **sheaf** on  $X$  is  $\mathcal{F}$  s.t.*

- $\forall U \subset X$  open,  $\exists \mathcal{F}(U) \in C$
- $\forall U \subset V$  open subsets  $\exists r_{V,U} \in \text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}(V), \mathcal{F}(U))$  satisfying
  1.  $\forall U \subset V \subset W, r_{W,U} = r_{V,U} \circ r_{W,V}$
  2. (Gluing)  $\forall U, V \subset X, \sigma \in \mathcal{F}(U), \tau \in \mathcal{F}(V)$  s.t.  $\sigma|_{U \cap V} = \tau|_{U \cap V}, \exists \rho \in \mathcal{F}(U \cup V)$  s.t.
 
$$\rho|_U = \sigma, \quad \rho|_V = \tau$$
  3. (Locality) If  $\sigma, \tau \in \mathcal{F}(U \cup V)$  are s.t.
 
$$\sigma|_U = \tau|_U, \quad \sigma|_V = \tau|_V$$

then  $\sigma = \tau$ .

We denote the category of sheaves on  $X$  as  $\text{Sh}(X)$ .

**Remark.** *The category in the above definition is often either commutative rings or abelian groups. If we construct a category  $S$  that has open subsets of  $X$  as objects and  $\text{Hom}(U, V)$  has a unique morphism of inclusion  $U \hookrightarrow V$  if  $U \subset V$  then we see that  $\mathcal{F}$  is a contravariant functor with some additional data. If  $C$  admits products of objects then that additional data can be represented as saying*



$$\mathcal{F}(U \cup V) \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}(U) \times \mathcal{F}(V) \rightrightarrows \mathcal{F}(U \cap V)$$

is an equaliser. Without this equaliser condition, this is just what we call a **presheaf**.

**Definition 13.2.** Given a presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $X$ , the **stalk** at  $P \in X$  is the direct limit of  $\mathcal{F}(U)$  over  $U$  containing  $P$ . It is denoted as  $\mathcal{F}_P$ . This is often written

$$\mathcal{F}_P = \varinjlim_{U \ni P} \mathcal{F}(U).$$

We may do our usual homological algebra nonsense with these sheaves.

**Definition 13.3.** A morphism of sheaves is a natural transformation  $\alpha : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$ . Hence we have  $\alpha(U) \in \text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}(U), \mathcal{G}(U))$ . Recall that means we have commuting diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{F}(U) & \xrightarrow{\alpha(U)} & \mathcal{G}(U) \\ \downarrow r_{UV} & & \downarrow r'_{UV} \\ \mathcal{F}(V) & \xrightarrow{\alpha(V)} & \mathcal{G}(V) \end{array}$$

**Proposition 13.4.** Given a presheaf  $\mathcal{F}$ , there is a sheaf  $\mathcal{F}^+$  and a morphism  $\theta : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^+$  with the property that for any sheaf  $\mathcal{G}$  and morphism  $\phi : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$ ,  $\exists \psi : \mathcal{F}^+ \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  s.t.  $\phi = \psi \circ \theta$ . Moreover, the pair  $(\mathcal{F}^+, \theta)$  is unique up to unique isomorphism.

*Proof.* We prove via construction. Define □

**Definition 13.5.**  $\mathcal{F}^+$  is called the **sheafification** of  $\mathcal{F}$ .

**Definition 13.6.** Given  $\alpha : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$  a morphism of sheaves, the **presheaf kernel** is  $\ker_{\text{pre}} \alpha$  given by  $(\ker_{\text{pre}} \alpha)(U) = \ker(\alpha(U))$ . Likewise the **presheaf image** is the presheaf  $\text{Im}_{\text{pre}} \alpha$  given by  $(\text{Im}_{\text{pre}} \alpha)(U) = \text{Im}(\alpha(U))$ .

**Proposition 13.7.** The presheaf kernel is a sheaf.

**Example 13.8.** Let  $X = \mathbb{C}$ ,  $O_X$  be the sheaf of holomorphic functions on  $X$ , and  $O_X^\times$  the sheaf of invertible functions, where we consider them as sheaves of abelian groups under multiplication. We get an exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow O_X \rightarrow O_X^\times \rightarrow 1$$

**Definition 13.9.** A **ringed space** is a pair  $(X, O_X)$  where  $X$  is a topological space and  $O_X$  is a sheaf of rings on  $X$ .  $O_X$  is called the **structure sheaf**.

**Example 13.10.** Given a topological space  $X$ , if we take  $O_X$  to be  $\mathbb{R}$ -valued continuous functions on open subsets of  $X$  then  $(X, O_X)$  is a ringed space.

**Example 13.11.** An example that will be relevant for later discussions is that an affine variety  $X$  with sheaf  $O_X$  given by  $O_X(U)$  being the regular functions on  $U$ , regular functions being those given locally by polynomials.

how does this correspond with the following definition: given  $Y \subset X$  a codim-1 submanifold we denote  $O_X(-Y)$  the sheaf of functions 0 on  $Y$ , and its dual to be  $O_X(Y) = O_X(-Y)^*$ .

## 13.2 Examples

Populate this section with examples setting notation

## 13.3 Direct Image and Pullback

**Definition 13.12.** Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a continuous map of topological spaces, then we define the **direct image functor**  $f_* : \text{Sh}(X) \rightarrow \text{Sh}(Y)$  s.t. for  $\mathcal{F} \in \text{Sh}(X)$ ,  $U \subset Y$  open,

$$(f_*\mathcal{F})(U) = \mathcal{F}(f^{-1}(U)).$$

**Example 13.13.** For a topological space  $X$ ,  $x \in X$ , and  $S$  a set, the **skyscraper sheaf** is  $\text{skyscr}_x(S) \in \text{Sh}(X)$  given by

$$\text{skyscr}_x(S) : (U \subset X) \mapsto \begin{cases} S & x \in U \\ * & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

Viewing  $S$  as a sheaf over  $\{x\}$ , the skyscraper sheaf is it's direct image.

**Remark.** Note that we required  $f$  to be continuous to ensure that  $\forall U$  open we had  $f^{-1}(U)$  open. If we wanted to consider a sort of 'inverse' to this functor, we there for need to be slightly careful.

**Definition 13.14.** Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a continuous map of topological spaces, then we define the **inverse image functor**  $f^{-1} : \text{Sh}(Y) \rightarrow \text{Sh}(X)$  s.t. for  $\mathcal{G} \in \text{Sh}(Y)$ ,  $U \subset X$  open,  $f^{-1}\mathcal{G}$  is the sheafification of the presheaf

$$U \mapsto \varinjlim_{V \supseteq f(U)} \mathcal{G}(V).$$

We will often call  $f^{-1}\mathcal{G}$  the **topological pullback**.

**Proposition 13.15.**  $f^{-1}$  is the left adjoint of  $f_*$ .

When  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a morphism of locally ringed spaces, as we will deal with in algebraic geometry, we want sheaves on  $Y$  to be  $\mathcal{O}_Y$ -modules. As such  $f^{-1}$  is not appropriate, as  $f^{-1}(\mathcal{G})$  may not be an  $\mathcal{O}_X$  module. As such we introduce an additional construction.

**Definition 13.16.** We define  $f^*\mathcal{G}$  the **analytic pullback** to be

$$f^*\mathcal{G} = f^{-1}\mathcal{G} \otimes_{f^{-1}\mathcal{O}_Y} \mathcal{O}_X.$$

**Lemma 13.17.** Analytical pullback is compatible with pullback of bundles, that is if  $E \rightarrow Y$  is a bundle then

$$f^*\mathcal{O}_Y(E) = \mathcal{O}_X(f^*E).$$

**Proposition 13.18.** We have an exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow f^{-1}\mathcal{G} \rightarrow f^*\mathcal{G}$$

### 13.4 The Ideal Sheaf

**Definition 13.19.** Given a closed embedding  $i : X \hookrightarrow Y$  we define the **ideal sheaf**  $\mathcal{I}_{X/Y} = \mathcal{I}$  to be the kernel of the induced map of structure sheaves  $O_Y \rightarrow i_*O_X$ . This gives an exact sequence of  $O_Y$ -modules

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{I} \rightarrow O_Y \rightarrow i_*O_X \rightarrow 0.$$

**Lemma 13.20.**  $O_Y/\mathcal{I}_{X/Y} \cong O_X$ .

From this result we get for any invertible sheaf on  $Y$   $\mathcal{F}$  the exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{I} \otimes_{O_Y} \mathcal{F} \rightarrow O_Y \otimes_{O_Y} \mathcal{F} \rightarrow i_*O_X \otimes_{O_Y} \mathcal{F} \rightarrow 0$$

Note here  $O_Y \otimes_{O_Y} \mathcal{F} = \mathcal{F}$ , and using ‘niceness’ properties (when  $i^\#$  is a flat epimorphism, see here)  $i_*$  commutes with tensor product so  $i_*O_X \otimes_{O_Y} \mathcal{F} = i_*\mathcal{F}$ .

**Definition 13.21.** We define the **conormal sheaf** to be  $\mathcal{N}_{X/Y}^\vee = \mathcal{I}/\mathcal{I}^2$ .

**Definition 13.22.** We define the **normal sheaf** to be  $\mathcal{N}_{X/Y} = \text{Hom}_{O_X}(\mathcal{N}^\vee, O_X)$ .

**Remark.** Some authors will use  $\mathcal{N}^*$  instead of  $\mathcal{N}^\vee$ . This is slightly worse notation, as the point is that they are not exactly dual, see [50].

**Proposition 13.23** (Conormal exact sequence). Given  $Z \hookrightarrow X \xrightarrow{i} Y$  we have SES

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{N}_{X/Y} \rightarrow i^*\Omega_{Y/Z} \rightarrow \Omega_{X/Z} \rightarrow 0.$$

The corresponding dual sequence is

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_X \rightarrow i^*\mathcal{T}_Y \rightarrow \mathcal{N}_{X/Y} \rightarrow 0.$$

*Proof.* See [50] for a full discussion. □

### 13.5 Cohomology

We will now see two definition of cohomology which apply to sheaves. They will turn out to be equivalent under rather general conditions.

#### 13.5.1 Sheaf Cohomology

**Lemma 13.24.** For any topological space  $X$ ,  $\text{Sh}(X)$  has enough injectives.

*Proof.* See [30], thm II.3.1. □

**Definition 13.25.** The **global section functor** is  $\Gamma = \Gamma(X, \cdot) : \text{Sh}(X) \rightarrow \text{Ab}$ ,  $\Gamma(X, \mathcal{F}) = \mathcal{F}(X)$ .

**Definition 13.26.** The **sheaf cohomology** of topological space  $X$  is  $H^i(X, \cdot) : \text{Sh}(X) \rightarrow \text{Ab}$ ,  $H^i(X, \mathcal{F}) = [R^i\Gamma(X, \cdot)](\mathcal{F})$

### 13.5.2 Čech Cohomology

**Definition 13.27.** For a sheaf  $\mathcal{F}$  on  $X$  with open cover  $\mathcal{U} = \{U_\alpha\}$  we define the **Čech cochain complex** by the direct product

$$C^k(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) = \prod_{i_0 < \dots < i_k} \mathcal{F}(U_{i_0} \cap \dots \cap U_{i_k})$$

with differential  $\delta$  given by (for example)

$$\begin{aligned} (\delta_0 \sigma)_{U,V} &= \sigma_V - \sigma_U \\ (\delta_1 \rho)_{U,V,W} &= \rho_{V,W} - \rho_{U,W} + \rho_{U,V} \end{aligned}$$

**Definition 13.28.** The **Čech cohomology** of an open cover  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $X$  with values in  $\mathcal{F}$  is the cohomology of the associated Čech cochain complex, denoted  $\check{H}^i(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F})$ . The Čech cohomology of  $X$  is

$$\check{H}^i(X, \mathcal{F}) = \varinjlim_{\mathcal{U}} \check{H}^i(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F})$$

where open covers are directed under refinement.

Note that for any  $\mathcal{U}$  we have a homomorphism  $\check{H}^i(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow \check{H}^i(X, \mathcal{F})$ .

**Definition 13.29.** A cover  $\mathcal{U}$  is a **Leray cover** wrt  $\mathcal{F}$  if  $\check{H}^i(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) \xrightarrow{\cong} \check{H}^i(X, \mathcal{F})$ .

An alternative characterisation is given by the following prop.

**Proposition 13.30.** A cover  $\mathcal{U}$  is Leray wrt  $\mathcal{F}$  if  $\forall \{i_1, \dots, i_n\}$  finite non-empty sets of indices, and  $\forall k > 0$ ,  $H^k(U_{i_1} \cap \dots \cap U_{i_n}, \mathcal{F}) = 0$  in regular sheaf cohomology.

*Proof.* See *Several Complex Variables with Connections to Algebraic Geometry* by Joseph Taylor. □

**Definition 13.31.** An open cover is **good** if all sets and intersections of finitely many sets are contractible.

**Proposition 13.32.** A good cover is a Leray cover

*Proof.* The Leray spectral sequence degenerates for a good cover, and so .... Alternatively, note that if all the  $U_{i_1} \cap \dots \cap U_{i_n}$  are contractible, they certainly have trivial  $k$ th cohomology for  $k > 0$ , so the condition of 13.30 is satisfied. □

**Proposition 13.33.** Any non-trivial covering of a 1d-complex manifold is Leray.

*Proof.* See [51], §3.3. □

**Remark.** Note that to think about this section from a different perspective, you could look at my notes on symplectic integrators and persistent homology.

### 13.5.3 Equivalence

### 13.5.4 Properties

We will now list a few of the useful properties to recall of sheaf cohomology.

**Proposition 13.34.** *Given  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $\mathcal{F} \in \text{Sh}(X)$  there are natural isomorphisms  $H^i(X, \mathcal{F}) \cong H^i(Y, f_*\mathcal{F})$ .*

*Proof.* This is exercise 4.1 in chapter 3 of [26]. Note there are technical assumptions to make here that I have ignored. For more see here.  $\square$

**Proposition 13.35.**  $\bigoplus_i H^j(X, \mathcal{F}_i) = H^j(X, \bigoplus_i \mathcal{F}_i)$ . *flesh out.*

## 14 Schemes

### 14.1 Spec

To start our understanding of schemes, we are going to define a sheaf on  $\text{Spec}(A)$ , the topological space.

**Definition 14.1.** *For each prime ideal  $\mathfrak{p} \triangleleft A$ , denote the localisation at  $\mathfrak{p}$  to be  $A_{\mathfrak{p}} := (A \setminus \mathfrak{p})^{-1}A$ . Define the presheaf  $\mathcal{O}$  on  $\text{Spec}(A)$  by*

$$\mathcal{O}(U) = \left\{ s : U \rightarrow \bigsqcup_{\mathfrak{p} \in U} A_{\mathfrak{p}} \mid s(\mathfrak{p}) \in A_{\mathfrak{p}}, \text{ } s \text{ locally a quotient of elements in } A \right\}.$$

*By the latter condition, we explicitly mean  $\forall \mathfrak{p} \in U, \exists V$  an neighbourhood of  $\mathfrak{p}$  and  $a, f \in A$  s.t.  $\forall \mathfrak{q} \in V, f \in \mathfrak{q}$  and  $s(\mathfrak{q}) = \frac{a}{f}$ . Note this makes sense if  $s(\mathfrak{q}) = \frac{a}{f} \in A_{\mathfrak{q}}, f \in A \setminus \mathfrak{q}$ .*

**Lemma 14.2.**  $\mathcal{O}$  is a sheaf.

**Remark.** *The sheaf  $\mathcal{O}$  should feel like the sheaf of rational functions in a polynomial ring.*

**Definition 14.3.** *Given a ring  $A$  we define  $\text{Spec}(A)$  (as a scheme) to be the topological space  $\text{Spec}(A)$  with the sheaf of rings  $\mathcal{O}$*

**Definition 14.4.** *Given  $f \in A$ , define  $D(f) = \text{Spec } A \setminus V((f))$ .*

**Lemma 14.5.** *The  $D(f)$  form an open base of the topology.*

**Proposition 14.6.** *We have the properties:*

- $\forall \mathfrak{p} \in \text{Spec } A, \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}} \cong A_{\mathfrak{p}},$
- $\forall f \in A, \mathcal{O}(D(f)) \cong A_f$ , where  $A_f = S^{-1}A$  and  $S = \{f^n \mid n \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}\},$
- in particular  $\Gamma(\text{Spec } A, \mathcal{O}) \cong A.$

**Definition 14.7.** A **ringed space** is a pair  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  s.t.  $X$  is a topological space and  $\mathcal{O}_X$  is a sheaf of rings on  $X$ . A morphism  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X) \rightarrow (Y, \mathcal{O}_Y)$  is a pair  $(f, f^\#)$  s.t.  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a cts map and  $f^\# : \mathcal{O}_Y \rightarrow f_* \mathcal{O}_X$  is a morphism of sheaves over  $Y$ . A ringed space is a **locally ringed space** if  $\forall P \in X$ , the stalk  $\mathcal{O}_{X,P}$  is a local ring. Morphisms of locally ringed spaces are morphisms of ringed spaces s.t. the induced map  $f_P^\# : \mathcal{O}_{Y,f(P)} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X,P}$  is a local homomorphism of local rings.

**Proposition 14.8.** We have

- $\forall A$  a ring,  $(\text{Spec } A, \mathcal{O})$  is a locally ringed space.
- $\phi : A \rightarrow B$  a ring hom induces a natural morphism of ringed spaces  $\text{Spec } B \rightarrow \text{Spec } A$ .
- $\forall A, B$ , a morphism of locally ringed spaces  $\text{Spec } B \rightarrow \text{Spec } A$  is induced by a ring hom  $\phi : A \rightarrow B$ .

**Definition 14.9.** An **affine scheme** is a locally ringed space  $(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$  which is isomorphic to the spectrum of some ring. We call  $X$  the **underlying topological space** and  $\mathcal{O}_X$  the **structure sheaf**. A **scheme** is a locally ringed space s.t.  $\forall P \in X$ ,  $\exists I \ni P$  open s.t.  $(U, \mathcal{O}_X|_U)$  is an affine scheme.

**Example 14.10.** If  $k$  is a field we define the affine line over  $k$  to be  $\mathbb{A}_k^1 := \text{Spec } k[x]$  ( $k$  not necessarily algebraically closed). It has two classes of points.

1. The point  $\xi = (0)$ . This is called the **generic point** as

$$\xi \in V(\mathfrak{a}) \Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{a} \subseteq (0) \Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{a} = (0) \Leftrightarrow V(\mathfrak{a}) = \mathbb{A}_k^1.$$

Hence the closure of the point is all of  $\mathbb{A}_k^1$ , and we think of this point as permeating the entire space.

2. Points  $(f)$  where  $f$  is an irreducible polynomial. We can choose the representative to be monic, and  $f$  must be non-constant otherwise  $(f) = (1) = k[x]$  (not prime). These points are all closed, as

$$(f) \subseteq (g) \Rightarrow g \mid f$$

which isn't possible as  $f$  is irreducible, unless  $g = f$  or a constant. Hence  $V((f)) = \{(f)\}$ .

Note that if  $k$  is algebraically closed, non-constant monic irreducible polynomials are of the form  $x - a$  for  $a \in k$ , hence there is a closed point for each element of  $k$ .

**Example 14.11.** We define the **affine plane over  $k$**  to be  $\mathbb{A}_k^2 := \text{Spec } k[x, y]$  for  $k$  algebraically closed. It has three classes of points.

1. The generic point  $\xi = (0)$  as before.
2. A closed point for each  $(a, b) \in k^2$  corresponding to the maximal ideal  $(x - a, y - b)$ .
3. A generic point  $(f)$  spread out along the curve in  $k^2$  given by  $f(x, y) = 0$ , where  $f$  is an irreducible polynomial (not maximal as it is contained in the ideal  $(x, y)$ ) whose closure contains all points  $(x - a, y - b)$  s.t.  $f(a, b) = 0$ .

**Remark.** For a nice example visualising  $\text{Spec } \mathbb{Z}[x]$ , see [here](#).

**Remark.** There is likewise a construction called  $\text{Proj } S$  for  $S$  a graded ring, which is a scheme. It will be important as a generalisation because if  $k$  is an algebraically closed field,  $\text{Proj } k[x_0, \dots, x_n]$  has the subspace of closed points which is homeomorphic to the variety  $\mathbb{P}_k^n$ . As a space  $\text{Proj}$  consists of homogeneous prime ideals that don't contain  $S_+ := \bigoplus_{d>0} S_d$ , and so for example in the case of  $\text{Proj } k[x, y]$  the closed points look like  $\langle ax + by \rangle$ .

**Definition 14.12.** Given a fixed scheme  $S$ , a **scheme over  $S$**  is a scheme  $X$  with morphism  $S$ . A morphism of schemes over  $S$  is a scheme morphism compatible with those to  $S$ . We denote the category of schemes over  $S$  by  $\mathfrak{Sch}(S)$ , and by abuse of notation the category of schemes over  $\text{Spec } A$  by  $\mathfrak{Sch}(A)$ .

**Proposition 14.13.** Let  $k$  be an algebraically closed field, then there is a natural fully faithful (i.e. bijective on hom-sets) functor  $t : \mathfrak{Var}(k) \rightarrow \mathfrak{Sch}(k)$  s.t., for any variety  $V$ , it's topological space is homeomorphic to set of closed points of  $t(V)$ , and it's sheaf of regular functions is the restriction of the structure sheaf of  $t(V)$  via this homeomorphism.

## Part III

# Riemann Surfaces

Riemann surfaces are 1-dimensional complex manifolds (don't worry we'll get the proper definition later). These are relevant from algebraic geometry for the following reason:

**Theorem 14.14.** Every compact Riemann surface is an algebraic curve.

*Proof.* See Griffiths & Harris [22]. □

## 15 Examples of Riemann Surfaces

### 15.1 Smooth Projective Plane Curves

**Definition 15.1.** A  $\mathbb{C}$ -polynomial  $F(\mathbf{x}) = F(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  is **homogeneous of degree  $d$**  if

$$\forall \lambda \in \mathbb{C}, F(\lambda \mathbf{x}) = \lambda^d F(\mathbf{x})$$

**Definition 15.2.** The **projective plane curve** defined by the homogeneous polynomial  $F : \mathbb{C}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is the closed subset

$$X = \{[x : y : z] \in \mathbb{P}^2 \mid F(x, y, z) = 0\} \subset \mathbb{P}^2$$

**Remark.** Note that this is well defined as  $F(x, y, z) = 0 \Leftrightarrow \lambda^d F(x, y, z) = F(\lambda x, \lambda y, \lambda z) = 0$

**Definition 15.3.** A homogeneous polynomial  $F : \mathbb{C}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is **singular at  $\mathbf{x}$**  (i.e.  $\mathbf{x}$  is a **singular point**) if  $\forall 1 \leq i \leq n$

$$\left. \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_i} \right|_{\mathbf{x}} = 0$$

The polynomial is said to be **non-singular** if it has no singular points

**Proposition 15.4.** *The projective plane curve corresponding to a non-singular homogeneous polynomial is a compact Riemann surface.*

**Remark.** *A degree 3 polynomial in  $\mathbb{P}^2$  can be written as*

$$F = a_1 X^3 + a_2 Y^3 + \cdots + a_{10} Y Z^2$$

*8 of these parameters can be removed by a linear change of these coordinates (i.e. by a transform in  $PGL_3(\mathbb{C})$ ) and one can be removed by an overall scaling, so there is 1 remaining degree of freedom. This will correspond to how elliptic curves (see later) have one moduli (the period ratio). It can likewise be shown that a degree 5 curve will have 101 degrees of freedom.*

## 15.2 Complex Tori

**Definition 15.5.** *A map between Riemann surfaces  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is called an **isomorphism** iff the induced maps on open subsets of  $\mathbb{C}$  is bijective and analytic. If there is an isomorphism between  $X, Y$ , they are said to be isomorphic.*

**Definition 15.6.** *Fix  $\omega_1, \omega_2 \in \mathbb{C}$  linearly independent over  $\mathbb{R}$  and let*

$$L = L(\omega_1, \omega_2) = \mathbb{Z}\omega_1 \oplus \mathbb{Z}\omega_2 \subset \mathbb{C}$$

*The complex tori with lattice  $L$  is  $X = \mathbb{C}/L$ . The corresponding **fundamental cell** is*

$$\mathfrak{F} = \mathfrak{F}(X) = \{\alpha\omega_1 + \beta\omega_2 \mid \alpha, \beta \in [0, 1]\}$$

**Proposition 15.7.** *Complex tori are Riemann surfaces.*

**Proposition 15.8.** *Two complex tori with lattices  $L(\omega_1, \omega_2), L(\omega'_1, \omega'_2)$  are isomorphic iff  $\exists$  a fractional linear transformation sending  $\frac{\omega_2}{\omega_1} \mapsto \frac{\omega'_2}{\omega'_1}$*

**Proposition 15.9.** *Every complex tori can be written with a lattice the form  $L(1, \tau)$  where  $\Im\tau > 0$*

**Remark.** *From the above results we can view the orbits of the modular group acting on the UHP as a list of all possible complex structures on the topological torus. We will always assume  $\frac{\omega_2}{\omega_1}$  has positive imaginary part.*

## 16 Properties of Riemann Surfaces

### 16.1 Riemann Hurwitz

**Definition 16.1.** *Let  $f : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be meromorphic at  $z_0 \in \mathbb{C}$  about which it's Laurent series  $\sum_n c_n(z - z_0)^n$ . The **order** of  $f$  at  $z_0$  is*

$$\text{ord}_{z_0}(f) = \min \{n \mid c_n \neq 0\}$$

**Remark.** *This definition naturally extends to maps between Riemann surfaces by taking local coordinates around the points.*

**Lemma 16.2.** *Let  $f, g : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be non-zero meromorphic functions and  $p \in X$ . Then*



- $\text{ord}_p(fg) = \text{ord}_p(f) + \text{ord}_p(g)$
- $\text{ord}_p\left(\frac{1}{f}\right) = -\text{ord}_p(f)$
- $\text{ord}_p\left(\frac{f}{g}\right) = \text{ord}_p(f) - \text{ord}_p(g)$

*Proof.* The first results follows from multiplying together the Laurent series. The second and third then follow.  $\square$

**Lemma 16.3.** *Let  $X$  be a Riemann surface and  $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  a non-constant meromorphic function. The set*

$$\{p \in X, \text{ord}_p(f) \neq 0\} \subset X$$

*is discrete.*

*Proof.* If the set of poles of  $f$  had an accumulation point, around this point  $f$  would have no Laurent series. A similar argument gives no accumulation point for zeros.  $\square$

**Corollary 16.4.** *Let  $X$  be a compact Riemann surface and  $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  a non-constant meromorphic function. The set*

$$\{p \in X, \text{ord}_p(f) \neq 0\} \subset X$$

*is finite.*

**Definition 16.5.** *Let  $F : X \rightarrow Y$  be a map between Riemann surfaces holomorphic at  $p \in X$ . The **multiplicity** of  $F$  at  $p$  is  $\text{mult}_p(F) = m$  the unique integer s.t. in local coordinates around  $p$   $F$  is represented by*

$$h(z) = h(z_0) + \sum_{i \geq m} c_i (z - z_0)^i$$

**Definition 16.6.** *Let  $F : X \rightarrow Y$  be a non-constant holomorphic map of Riemann surfaces.  $p \in X$  is called a **ramification point** if  $\text{mult}_p(F) \geq 2$ .  $y \in Y$  is called a **branch point** if  $y = F(p)$  for some ramification point  $p$ .*

**Remark.** *The thing to note here is that, generically,  $\text{mult}_p(F) = 1$*

**Proposition 16.7.** *Let  $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a meromorphic function and  $F : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}_\infty$  the associated holomorphic map. Then*

1. *If  $p \in X$  is a zero of  $f$ ,  $\text{mult}_p(F) = \text{ord}_p(f)$*
2. *If  $p \in X$  is a pole of  $f$ ,  $\text{mult}_p(F) = -\text{ord}_p(f)$*
3. *If  $p \in X$  is neither a zero or a pole,  $\text{mult}_p(F) = \text{ord}_p(f - f(p))$*

**Proposition 16.8.** *Let  $F : X \rightarrow Y$  be a holomorphic non-constant map of Riemann surfaces and consider the map  $d.(F) : Y \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$*

$$d_y(F) = \sum_{p \in F^{-1}(y)} \text{mult}_p(F)$$

*The map  $d$  is constant.*

**Definition 16.9.** Let  $F : X \rightarrow Y$  be a holomorphic non-constant map of Riemann surfaces. The *degree* of  $F$  is

$$\deg(F) = d_y(F) \text{ for some } y \in Y$$

**Proposition 16.10.** Let  $X$  be a compact Riemann surface and  $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  a non-constant meromorphic function. Then

$$\sum_{p \in X} \text{ord}_p(f) = 0$$

*Proof.* Consider the corresponding map  $F : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}_\infty$ . Let  $\{x_i\} = F^{-1}(0)$ ,  $\{y_j\} = F^{-1}(\infty)$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_p \text{ord}_p(f) &= \sum_i \text{ord}_{x_i}(f) + \sum_j \text{ord}_{y_j}(f) \\ &= \sum_i \text{mult}_{x_i}(F) - \sum_j \text{mult}_{y_j}(F) \\ &= d_0(F) - d_\infty(F) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

□

**Remark.** As  $f$  can only have finitely many poles and zeros, for all but finitely many  $p \in X$  we have  $\text{ord}_p(f) = 0$  so the sum makes sense.

**Theorem 16.11** (Riemann-Hurwitz Formula). Let  $F : X \rightarrow Y$  be a non-constant holomorphic map between compact Riemann surfaces. Then

$$g(X) - 1 = \deg(F) [g(Y) - 1] + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{p \in X} [\text{mult}_p(F) - 1]$$

where  $g$  is the genus of the underlying topological surface.

*Proof.* [42] gives an ‘elementary’ proof. The result can also be deduced from Riemann-Roch (see later). □

**Example 16.12.** An example that will be important to example later is that of a projective plane curve  $X$  given by

$$X = \{[x : y : z] \mid P(x, y, z) = 0\} \subset \mathbb{P}^2$$

where  $P : \mathbb{C}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is the homogeneous polynomial

$$P(x, y, z) = y^2 z - x^3 + x z^2 - z^3$$

We note we can write

$$X = \{[x : y : 1] \mid y^2 = x^3 - x + 1\} \cup \{[0 : 1 : 0]\}$$

We consider a map  $F : X \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^1$  by taking a coordinate on the curve. On the patch  $z \neq 0$  we can choose  $x$ , and around  $z = 0 = x$  we can choose  $1/x$ . We find that a generic point has two preimages

except at the roots of  $x^3 - x + 1$  or at 'infinity' ( $z = 0 = x$ ) as at all these points there is only one value of  $y$ . Hence

$$g(X) = 1 + 2[0 - 1] + \frac{1}{2} \times 4[2 - 1] = 1$$

so topologically this curve is a torus.

**Remark.** In the above calculation we have considered as subset of projective space. One can also consider curves that are subsets of weighted projective space, and here the calculation of genus becomes more complicated, e.g. see here.

## 16.2 Automorphisms

Recall the action of the Möbius group on the Riemann sphere. This illustrates the following fact.

**Proposition 16.13.**  $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{P}^1) \cong \text{PSL}(2, \mathbb{C})$ .

**Proposition 16.14** ([11]). Given a Fuchsian group  $\Gamma$ , the quotient space of the UHP  $X = H/\Gamma$  is a Riemann surface, and all Riemann surfaces may be obtained in this way.

**Proposition 16.15.**  $\text{Aut}(X) \cong \Gamma/K$  for some  $K \triangleleft \Gamma$ .

By considering the covering map  $X \rightarrow X/\text{Aut}(X)$ , we have the following corollary of Riemann-Hurwitz (see [40]):

**Theorem 16.16.** If  $X$  is a compact Riemann surface with  $g \geq 2$  then  $|\text{Aut}(X)| \leq 84(g - 1)$ .

**Definition 16.17.** The bound  $|\text{Aut}(X)| \leq 84(g - 1)$  is called the **Hurwitz bound**. Surfaces that achieve this bound are called **Hurwitz surfaces**.

**Example 16.18.** There is a unique Hurwitz curve of genus 3, Klein's curve. There is a unique example in genus 7, the Fricke-Macbeath curve.

**Theorem 16.19.** The Hurwitz bound is achieved iff  $X = \Gamma/K$  where  $\Gamma$  has presentation

$$\langle x_1, x_2, x_3, | x_1^2 = x_2^3 = x_3^7 = x_1 x_2 x_3 = 1 \rangle,$$

i.e.  $\Gamma$  is isomorphic to the  $(2, 3, 7)$  triangle group.

**Theorem 16.20** (Wiman, 1895). There is no Hurwitz curve of genus  $g = 2, 4, 5, 6$ .

**Theorem 16.21.** A non-identity automorphism of a Riemann surface fixes at most  $2g + 2$  points.

## 16.3 Field of Functions

**Definition 16.22.** Let  $X$  be a Riemann surface. The set of all meromorphic functions  $X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is called the **field of functions** of  $X$  and is denoted  $K(X)$ .

**Example 16.23.**  $K(\mathbb{P}^1) \cong \mathbb{C}(x)$

**Proposition 16.24.**  $K(X)$  is a field extension of  $\mathbb{C}$ .

**Proposition 16.25.** *If  $X$  is a compact Riemann surface then  $K(X)/\mathbb{C}$  is a field extension of transcendence degree 1.*

**Definition 16.26.** *Let  $X, Y$  be Riemann surfaces and  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  a branched covering map. A **deck transformation** is a fiber preserving biholomorphic map, that is, a map  $f$  such that the diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & X \\ p \downarrow & \nearrow p & \\ Y & & \end{array}$$

*commutes. We denote the set of them  $\text{Deck}(X/Y)$*

**Proposition 16.27.** *The set of deck transformations form a group under composition*

**Theorem 16.28.** *Let  $X, Y$  be compact Riemann surfaces and  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  a  $n$ -fold branched covering. Then  $K(X)/p^*K(Y)$  is a degree- $n$  field extension.*

*Conversely let  $Y$  be a Riemann surface and  $L/K(Y)$  a degree- $n$  field extension. Then  $\exists X$  a Riemann surface,  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  an  $n$ -sheeted branched covering map, and  $f \in K(X)$  s.t.  $L \cong K(X) = p^*K(Y)(f)$ .*

*In both cases,  $\text{Deck}(X/Y) \cong \text{Aut}(K(X)/p^*K(Y))$*

**Corollary 16.29.** *Let  $X, Y$  be compact Riemann surfaces, then  $X \cong Y$  iff  $K(X) \cong K(Y)$ .*

**Remark.** *We can view this final remark from the point of view of category theory. We can let  $R$  be the category of compact Riemann surfaces with morphisms given by holomorphic maps. We then give the contravariant functor*

$$K : R \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

*sending a compact Riemann surface  $X$  to its function field  $K(X)$ , and sending morphisms to their pullback. This is a representable functor as*

$$K(X) = \text{Hom}(X, \mathbb{P}^1)$$

*Hence that  $X \cong Y \Leftrightarrow K(X) \cong K(Y)$  is a consequence of the Yoneda lemma.*

## 16.4 Homology

**Lemma 16.30.**  $\dim H_1(X, \mathbb{Z}) = 2g(X)$  .

**Definition 16.31.** *We call elements of  $H_1(X, \mathbb{Z})$  1-cycles.*

**Definition 16.32.** *A homology basis  $\mathbf{c} = (\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$  is **canonical** (or **symplectic**) if  $\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{c} = J$  where we are taking the intersection number and  $J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & I \\ -I & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ .*

*A choice of canonical basis is sometimes called a **(Torelli) marking**.*

**Remark.** *Despite the term canonical, there is no unique choice of such a basis. Given any homology basis  $\mathbf{c}$  we can make a new basis by taking  $M\mathbf{c}$  for  $M \in GL_{2g}(\mathbb{Z})$ . If the original basis was canonical then so is the transformed basis iff  $MJM^T = J$ , which is the condition for  $M^T$  to be a symplectic matrix, giving  $M$  symplectic.*

## 16.5 Differentials

**Definition 16.33.** A holomorphic (resp. meromorphic) **1-form** on  $V \subset \mathbb{C}$  is an expression of the form  $\omega = f(z)dz$ , where  $f$  is a holomorphic (meromorphic) function on  $V$ .

Given two 1-forms  $\omega_1 = f(z)dz$ ,  $\omega_2 = g(w)dw$ , with  $z = T(w)$ , we say  $\omega_1$  transforms to  $\omega_2$  if  $g(w) = f(T(w))T'(w)$ .

A 1-form on a Riemann surface is a collection of 1-forms on each chart that transform to each other under the transition functions.

**Definition 16.34.** We likewise define **k-forms** on Riemann surfaces if we have the transformation  $g(w) = f(T(w)) [T'(w)]^k$ . We can have  $k$  an integer, or a half integer, in which case only  $\pm f$  is defined and we say  $f$  is a **spinor form** (see Eynard).

**Definition 16.35.** Given a basis of holomorphic differentials  $\{\omega_i\}$  on a Riemann surface  $X$ , we define the **canonical embedding** to be the map  $\Phi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^{g-1}$  given by

$$p \mapsto [\omega_1(p) : \cdots : \omega_g(p)].$$

The following result explains where the map gets its name.

**Theorem 16.36.** For  $g > 2$  the canonical embedding is either an embedding of  $X$  into  $\mathbb{P}^{g-1}$  or a  $2:1$  map onto  $\mathbb{P}^1$  embedded in  $\mathbb{P}^{g-1}$ , the latter of which are the hyperelliptic curves  $y^2 = p(x)$ .

*Proof.* See here. □

**Definition 16.37.** A curve is called a **canonical curve** if it is the image of a canonical embedding.

**Proposition 16.38** (Reciprocity Law). Let  $\Omega$  be a global holomorphic 1-form (i.e. a differential of the first kind) and  $\nu$  a global meromorphic 1-form with no residues (a differential of the second kind). Then writing  $\Omega = d\pi$  (which we can do locally by defining  $\pi(s) = \int^s \omega$ ) we have

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \sum_{i=1}^g \begin{bmatrix} \oint_{a_i} \omega & \oint_{a_i} \nu \\ \oint_{b_i} \omega & \oint_{b_i} \nu \end{bmatrix} = \sum_p \text{res}_p(\pi\nu).$$

*Proof.* See [23], p.241. □

## 16.6 The Riemann Matrix

We now want to consider the pairing of homology and cohomology on  $X$ . This can lead to information about the Abel-Jacobi map, but will also lead to an invariant of a Riemann surface. Relevant references include Eynard's Lectures on Compact Riemann Surfaces, Miranda, these notes.

The object we want to calculate is explicitly the period matrix, defined as follows:

**Definition 16.39.** Let  $\{a_i, b_i\}_{i=1}^g$  be a canonical choice of homology basis, and  $\{\omega_i\}_{i=1}^g$  a basis of holomorphic differentials. Then the **matrix of periods** is  $\Omega = (A, B)$  where we calculate the  $g \times g$  matrices  $A, B$  by

$$A_{ij} = \int_{a_j} \omega_i, \quad B_{ij} = \int_{b_j} \omega_i$$

In order to say something about the form of  $\Omega$ , we need the following result:

**Proposition 16.40** (Riemann's Bilinear Identities).  $\Omega J \Omega^T = 0$  and  $-i\bar{\Omega} J \Omega^T > 0$

**Corollary 16.41.** For a fixed differential basis  $\{\omega_i\}$ ,  $\exists \mathbf{c}$  a canonical basis s.t  $A_{ij} = \delta_{ij}$ .

**Definition 16.42.** The **Riemann matrix** corresponding to  $\Omega$  is  $\tau = A^{-1}B$ .

**Definition 16.43.** We define the **Siegel upper half space** to be

$$\mathbb{H}_g = \{M \in M_g(\mathbb{C}) \mid M^T = M, \text{Im } M > 0\}$$

**Lemma 16.44.**  $\tau \in \mathbb{H}_g$ .

**Example 16.45.**  $\mathbb{H}_1 = \mathbb{H} \subset \mathbb{C}$  is the upper half plane, explaining the name and notation convention. The case  $g = 1$  corresponds to elliptic curves, and we are recovering the usual  $\tau$  we assign which tells us about the period lattice of the torus. This is not a coincidence, and we shall later related  $\tau$  to the Jacobian of the curve.

**Remark.** There was a choice made in arranging this matrix as  $g \times 2g$ . Had we chosen instead  $\Omega$  to be  $2g \times g$  as

$$\tilde{\Omega}_{ij} = \int_{c_i} \omega_j$$

where  $\mathbf{c} = (\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$  is the tuple of cycles, then we get that  $\tilde{\Omega} = \Omega^T \Leftrightarrow \tilde{A} = A^T, \tilde{B} = B^T$ . In order to continue this correspondence to get  $\tilde{\tau} = \tau^T$  we need  $\tilde{\tau} = \tilde{B}\tilde{A}^{-1}$ . As  $\tau$  is symmetric, we know that  $\tilde{\tau} = \tau$ , so our value of Riemann matrix is not dependent on convention.

**Lemma 16.46.** If we change canonical homology basis by  $\mathbf{c}' = M\mathbf{c}$  where  $M = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in Sp(2g, \mathbb{Z})$ , then  $\Omega$  transforms as  $\tilde{\Omega}' = M\tilde{\Omega}$  and hence  $\tilde{\tau}' = (d\tilde{\tau} + c)(b\tilde{\tau} + a)^{-1}$ . If we change cohomology basis by  $\omega' = G\omega$  for  $G \in GL_g(\mathbb{C})$ , then  $\Omega$  transforms as  $\Omega' = G\Omega$  and hence  $\tau' = \tau$ .

**Remark.** It is for this reason that, although taking  $\Omega$  to be  $g \times 2g$  is seemingly a more prevalent convention, the latter is more sensible because of the corresponding actions. Moreover, if conjugate  $M$  with the outer automorphism  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & I \\ I & 0 \end{pmatrix}$  then we get  $\tilde{\tau}' = (a\tilde{\tau} + b)(c\tilde{\tau} + d)^{-1}$ , which recovers the fractional linear transformation action of  $SL_2(\mathbb{Z}) \cong Sp_2(\mathbb{Z})$  known in the case of elliptic curves. The reason for the conjugation is as with elliptic curves, we typically normalise the bottom element to 1 instead.

### 16.6.1 Riemann Matrices of Covered Spaces

Fay [21] is a good reference for this section, we will illustrate in a specific example, namely that of Burnside's curve. This builds of calculations in Braden's *Riemann Surfaces with Symmetry*. We let  $X$  be a genus 2 hyperelliptic curve with order 2 automorphism  $r$  that is not the hyperelliptic involution, and we quotient by it's action to get  $X \rightarrow \hat{X}$ , where  $\hat{X}$  is an elliptic curve. Then given two cycles  $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$  on  $\hat{X}$  that form a homology basis, we can construct a full homology basis on  $X$  from

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a}_1 &= \mathbf{a} + r_*\mathbf{a} \\ \mathbf{a}_2 &= \mathbf{b} - r_*\mathbf{b} \\ \mathbf{b}_1 &= \mathbf{b} \\ \mathbf{b}_2 &= r_*\mathbf{a} \end{aligned}$$

and if we choose a basis of differential  $\omega_1, \omega_2$  s.t  $r^*\omega_1 = \omega_1, r^*\omega_2 = -\omega_2$  we can find that the Riemann matrix is given by

$$\tau = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\int_{\mathfrak{b}} \omega_1}{2 \int_{\mathfrak{a}} \omega_1} & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{-\int_{\mathfrak{a}} \omega_2}{2 \int_{\mathfrak{b}} \omega_2} \end{pmatrix}$$

For later references we will fix this notation so

$$\tau_{11} = \frac{\int_{\mathfrak{b}} \omega_1}{2 \int_{\mathfrak{a}} \omega_1}, \quad \tau_{22} = \frac{-\int_{\mathfrak{a}} \omega_2}{2 \int_{\mathfrak{b}} \omega_2}$$

**Remark.** *Note we have been cavalier here with denoting  $\mathfrak{a}, \mathfrak{b}$  both as cycles on  $X$  and  $\hat{X}$ , **this may come back to bite us in the ass.***

To calculate the Riemann matrix on  $\hat{X}$  we keep our homology basis, but now we define a differential by first defining  $u, u'$  s.t.

$$\int_{\mathfrak{a}} u = 1, \quad \int_{-r_* \mathfrak{a}} u = 0, \quad \int_{\mathfrak{a}} u' = 0, \quad \int_{-r_* \mathfrak{a}} u' = 1$$

and then setting our differential to be  $\hat{\omega} = u - u'$ . We then have the Riemann matrix on  $\hat{X}$  as

$$\hat{\tau} = \frac{\int_{\mathfrak{b}} \hat{\omega}}{\int_{\mathfrak{a}} \hat{\omega}}$$

It can be shown that with these conventions  $\hat{\omega} = \frac{\omega_1}{\int_{\mathfrak{a}} \omega_1}$  and so we get  $\hat{\tau} = 2\tau_{11}$ .

The consequence of this is that, if we are given an elliptic curve with Riemann matrix  $\hat{\tau}$  and told that it is the base of a double cover of a genus 2 hyperelliptic curve  $X$  by an automorphism, then  $X$  has Riemann matrix

$$\tau = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} \hat{\tau} & 1 \\ 1 & 2\tau_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

At this point we cannot expect to know anything else about the hyperelliptic, as we know from the work of Bolza that the moduli space of hyperelliptic curves with a  $C_2$  symmetry is 2 dimensional. Note an alternate form for the Riemann matrix on  $X$  shown to exists by Fay was

$$\tau' = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} \hat{\tau} + \pi_{11} & -\hat{\tau} + \pi_{11} \\ -\hat{\tau} + \pi_{11} & \hat{\tau} + \pi_{11} \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $\pi_{11} = \frac{-1}{2\tau_{22}}$ .

Suppose now that  $X$  has a second non-hyperelliptic involution  $r'$ . From Bolza's classification we know that  $r, r'$  must generate a  $V_4$  group, so specifically  $rr' = r'r$ . We want a way to find  $\tau_{22}$  using this other involution, so we want to repeat the process as before using a new quotient by the  $r'$  action,  $\hat{X}'$ . As

$$r^* = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

wrt the basis, using our knowledge of matrix representations of the Klein 4 group we must have

$$(r')^* = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

so we need to swap the differentials (that is  $\omega'_1 = \omega_2$  and  $\omega'_2 = \omega_1$ )s now  $(r')^*\omega_2 = \omega_2$ ,  $(r')^*\omega_1 = -\omega_1$ . This yields

$$\hat{\tau}' = \frac{\int_{\mathbf{b}} \omega_2}{\int_{\mathbf{a}} \omega_2} = \frac{-1}{2\tau_{22}}$$

Hence we can now combine our knowledge when  $\hat{\tau} = \hat{\tau}'$  to say that  $X$  will have a Riemann matrix

$$\tau = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} \hat{\tau} & 1 \\ 1 & -1/\hat{\tau} \end{pmatrix}$$

## 17 Cohomology

Recall we discussed sheaf cohomology earlier in §13.5. When working over a Riemann surface the situation simplifies greatly, s.t. we have the following result:

**Theorem 17.1.** *Let  $X$  be a Riemann surface.*

- *If  $\mathcal{F} = (L)$ , the sheaf of holomorphic sections of a line bundle  $L \rightarrow X$ , then  $\forall p > 1$ ,  $H^p(X, \mathcal{F}) = 0$ .*
- *If  $\mathcal{F} = \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{Z}$ , then  $\forall p > 2$ ,  $H^p(X, \mathcal{F}) = 0$ .*

*Proof.* See [27, 24]. □

## 18 Divisors and their Applications

### 18.1 Divisors

**Definition 18.1.** A (*Weil*) **divisor** on  $C$  is a formal finite sum of points, i.e.  $D = \sum_i n_i p_i$  for  $n_i \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $p_i \in C$ . The group of divisors under addition is denoted  $\text{Div}(C)$ .

**Definition 18.2.** The **degree** of a divisor  $D = \sum_i n_i p_i$   $\deg D = \sum_i n_i$

**Definition 18.3.** Given a meromorphic function  $f : C \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  we define  $(f) \in \text{Div}(C)$  by

$$(f) = \sum_{p \in X} \text{ord}_p(f) \cdot p$$

For  $D \in \text{Div}(C)$ , if  $\exists f$  s.t.  $D = (f)$  we say  $D$  is a **principal divisor**.

Likewise given a meromorphic differential  $\omega$  written locally as  $\omega = f(z)dz$ , we define  $(\omega) = (f)$  (where we may need to cover  $C$  with multiple patches, and so receives multiple contributions).

**Lemma 18.4.**  $(fg) = (f) + (g)$



**Corollary 18.5.** *Principal divisors form a subgroup.*

**Definition 18.6.** *We define the **subgroup of principal divisors** to be  $\text{Lin}(C)$ .*

**Proposition 18.7.** *If  $C$  is a compact Riemann surface and  $f : C \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  meromorphic then  $\deg(f) = 0$ . Hence  $\text{Lin}(C) \subset \{D \in \text{Div}(C) \mid \deg(D) = 0\}$ .*

**Definition 18.8.** *The **divisor class group** of  $C$  is  $\text{Cl}(C) = \text{Div}(C) / \text{Lin}(C)$ . The equivalence class corresponding to  $D$  is often denoted as  $|D|$  and is called the **complete linear system** associated with  $D$ . We hence say two divisors  $D, E$  are **linearly equivalent** if  $D - E$  is a principal.*

**Remark.**  $\deg : \text{Div}(C) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  is a group homomorphism and as the kernel is  $\text{Lin}(C)$  we see  $\text{Cl}(C) \cong \text{Im } \deg$

**Corollary 18.9.**  $\text{Cl}(\mathbb{CP}^n) \cong \mathbb{Z}$ .

**Lemma 18.10.** *Linear equivalence of divisors is an equivalence relation.*

**Proposition 18.11.** *Given any two meromorphic functions  $f, g$  or any two meromorphic differentials  $\omega, \eta$ , we have  $(f) \sim (g)$  and  $(\omega) \sim (\eta)$ .*

*Proof.* Given  $f, g$ ,  $f/g$  is meromorphic and so  $(f) - (g) = (f/g) \Rightarrow (f) \sim (g)$ . The proof for differentials is likewise taking a local representation.  $\square$

This leads to an important definition.

**Definition 18.12.** *We define the **canonical divisor class** to be the element of the divisor class group corresponding to meromorphic differentials. We often denote a representative as  $K$ , the **canonical divisor**.*

**Proposition 18.13.** *The canonical divisor class is invariant under automorphisms.*

*Proof.* If  $K = (\omega)$ , and  $\sigma$  is an automorphisms, then  $\sigma^{-1}(K) = (\sigma^*\omega)$ , but the pullback of a holomorphic form is still a holomorphic form, so we are done by the uniqueness of the canonical divisor.  $\square$

**Proposition 18.14.** *A divisor corresponding to a meromorphic section of the canonical bundle is in the canonical divisor class.*

**Lemma 18.15.**  *$F : X \rightarrow Y$  induces a group morphism  $F : \text{Div}(X) \rightarrow \text{Div}(Y)$  by*

$$F \left( \sum_i n_i p_i \right) = \sum_i n_i F(p_i)$$

**Proposition 18.16.** *If  $F : X \rightarrow Y$  is a map of Riemann surfaces and  $D \in \text{Div}(X)$ , then  $\deg(F(D)) = \deg F \cdot \deg D$ .*

**Definition 18.17.** *A divisor  $D = \sum_i n_i p_i$  is **effective** (also called **integral** in [20]) if each  $n_i \geq 0$ .*

**Proposition 18.18.** *We have a partial ordering on  $\text{Div}(C)$  by saying  $D \geq D'$  if  $D - D'$  is effective.*

**Definition 18.19.** *A Weil divisor on  $C$  defines a **coherent** sheaf  $\mathcal{O}_C(D)$  as meromorphic functions  $f$  s.t  $(f) + D \geq 0$ .*

When we have a map of Riemann surfaces, we get some specific divisors.

**Definition 18.20.** Let  $F : \hat{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a nonconstant holomorphic map between Riemann surfaces. Then the **ramification divisor** of  $F$ , denoted by  $R_F$ , is the divisor on  $\hat{\mathcal{C}}$  defined by

$$R_F = \sum_{p \in \hat{\mathcal{C}}} (\text{mult}_p F - 1) p. \quad (18.1.1)$$

The **branch divisor** of  $F$ , denoted by  $B_F$ , is the divisor on  $\mathcal{C}$  defined by

$$B_F = \sum_{y \in \mathcal{C}} \left[ \sum_{p \in F^{-1}(y)} (\text{mult}_p F - 1) \right] y. \quad (18.1.2)$$

**Lemma 18.21.** With the notation above, if  $\omega$  is a meromorphic differential on  $\mathcal{C}$ , not identically zero, then

$$(F^* \omega) = F^* (\omega) + R_F. \quad (18.1.3)$$

## 18.2 Abel-Jacobi

Suppose  $C$  has genus  $g$ , then we know that  $H_1(C, \mathbb{Z}) \cong \mathbb{Z}^{2g}$  where the generators are the loops  $\{\gamma_i\}_{i=1}^{2g}$ . There is an alternative way to say this condition:

**Proposition 18.22.** If  $X = C$  is a Riemann surface of genus  $g$  then  $H^0(C, K) \cong \mathbb{C}^g$ .

*Proof.* See [20], III.2.7. □

**Corollary 18.23.** We can take a basis  $\{\omega_i\}_{i=1}^g$  of 1-forms on  $C$ .

**Definition 18.24.** The **Jacobian** of  $C$  is defined to be

$$J(C) = \mathbb{C}^g / \Lambda$$

where  $\Lambda$  is the lattice generated over  $\mathbb{R}$  by the vectors

$$\Omega_j = \left( \int_{\gamma_j} \omega_1, \dots, \int_{\gamma_j} \omega_g \right), \quad 1 \leq j \leq 2g$$

**Remark.** We will see later in definition 16.39 that these vectors are the rows(/columns depending on your definition) of the period matrix.

Using this interpretation, one can see we can view

$$J(C) \cong H^0(X, K_C)^* / H_1(C, \mathbb{Z}),$$

where the embedding  $H_1(C, \mathbb{Z}) \hookrightarrow H^0(X, K_C)^*$  is  $[\gamma] \mapsto \oint_{\gamma} \omega$ .

**Definition 18.25.** The **Abel-Jacobi map** for  $p_0 \in C$  is

$$A : C \rightarrow J(C) \\ p \mapsto \left( \int_{p_0}^p \omega_1, \dots, \int_{p_0}^p \omega_g \right) \mod \Lambda$$

This is independent of the path of integration as we have quotiented by  $\Lambda$ .

**Remark.** We can extend  $u$  to a map of divisors by

$$A : \text{Div}(C) \rightarrow J(C),$$

$$\sum_i n_i p_i \mapsto \sum_i n_i A(p_i).$$

We will on occasion denote the restriction of this extended map to degree- $k$  divisors as  $A^{(k)}$ . Moreover, we denote the image of effective degree- $k$  divisors with  $W_k = A(S^k C)$  (identifying effective degree- $k$  divisors with elements of  $S^k C$ ).

**Lemma 18.26.** Given a divisor  $D$ , the map  $A : S^k C \rightarrow W_k \subset J(C)$  has rank  $\deg(D) + 1 - l(D)$  at  $D$ .

*Proof.* We introduce the notation  $l(D)$  later in definition 18.48. This result is part of a larger prop in [20], p.141, §III.11.11.  $\square$

**Theorem 18.27** (Abel's Theorem). Let  $A$  be the Abel-Jacobi map and  $D, E$  effective divisors. Then  $A(D) = A(E) \Leftrightarrow D \sim E$ .

**Theorem 18.28** (Jacobi's (Inversion) Theorem). The map Abel-Jacobi map is surjective from  $S^g X$ .

*Proof.* See for example [20] §III.6.6 pp.91-92 and §VI.3.4, p.294.  $\square$

**Corollary 18.29.** There is an isomorphism from the space of degree-0 divisors to the Jacobian.

**Remark.** Note that when  $g = 1$ , we have an isomorphism  $X \cong J(X)$ . Surjectivity is not true of the map just from  $X$  when  $g > 1$ , and indeed we have the Manin-Mumford theorem (proved in [44]) that  $W_1 \cap J(X)$  contains only finitely-many torsion points.

**Remark.** In [21], p. 3, Fay will discuss the **characteristic homomorphism**  $\chi : \pi_1(C) \rightarrow (\mathbb{C}^*)^{2g}$  that defines a flat line bundle, and will reference the *Lectures on Riemann Surfaces* by Gunning. **What is this part of the story.**

### 18.3 Picard Group

**Definition 18.30.** The **Picard group** of a locally ringed space  $X$  is  $\text{Pic}(X)$  the group of isomorphism classes of line bundles on  $X$  with the group operation being  $\otimes$ .

**Remark.** In place of line bundles we can actually say **invertible sheaves**

We will first describe the Picard group using sheaf theory, we will then link it to divisors.

**Proposition 18.31.** There is a canonical isomorphism  $\text{Pic}(X) \cong H^1(X, \mathcal{O}_X^\times)$ .

*Proof.* This is a specialisation of prop 12.47.  $\square$

**Corollary 18.32.**  $T_L(\text{Pic}^d(X)) \cong H^1(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$

*Proof.* You need to use the **exponential sheaf sequence**.  $\square$

Recall we have that the first Chern class gives a group hom  $c_1 : \text{Pic}(X) \rightarrow H^2(X, \mathbb{Z})$ . We can interpret this concretely, by going from the exponential exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X^\times \rightarrow 1$$

to the long exact sequence on a compact Riemann surface

$$0 \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^\times \rightarrow H^1(X, \mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow H^1(X, \mathcal{O}_X) \rightarrow H^1(X, \mathcal{O}_X^\times) \xrightarrow{\delta} H^2(X, \mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow H^2(X, \mathcal{O}_X) \rightarrow \dots$$

This reduces to (see [27])

$$0 \rightarrow H^1(X, \mathcal{O}_X) / H^1(X, \mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow H^1(X, \mathcal{O}_X^\times) \xrightarrow{\delta} H^2(X, \mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow 0.$$

We identify  $\delta$  with  $c_1$ . If we further make the identification  $H^2(X, \mathbb{Z}) \cong \mathbb{Z}$  (using Poincaré duality so  $H^2 \cong H_0$ ) we get a group homomorphism  $\deg : \text{Pic}(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ .

**Lemma 18.33.**  $\deg(L \otimes L') = \deg L + \deg L'$ .

*Proof.* This is just the property that  $\deg$  is a group hom. □

**Proposition 18.34.** *If  $s \in H^0(X, L)$  is a section with zeros  $p_i$  with multiplicities  $m_i$ , then  $\deg L = \sum_i m_i$ .*

**Corollary 18.35.** *If  $\deg L < 0$ ,  $L$  has no non-trivial holomorphic sections.*

To illustrate these properties best, we define a particular line bundle on any Riemann surface

**Definition 18.36.** *Let  $X$  be a Riemann surface and  $p \in X$ . Take  $U_0$  to be an open neighbourhood of  $p$  with coordinate  $z$  s.t.  $z(p) = 0$ , and take  $U_1 = X \setminus \{p\}$ . We define the line bundle  $L_p \rightarrow X$  by the transition function  $g_{01} = z$ .*

**Example 18.37.** *When  $p = 0 \in \mathbb{P}^1$ ,  $L_p = \mathcal{O}(1)$ .*

**Lemma 18.38.**  *$L_p$  has a canonical section given by  $z$  on  $U_0$  and 1 on  $U_1$ .*

**Proposition 18.39.**  $\deg L_p = 1$ .

**Remark.** *One can think of this as choosing a normalisation for the generator of  $\mathbb{Z}$ .*

$L_p$  is a useful line bundle for proving multiple results. To see all these look at [27]. We may further use Serre and Poicaré duality to identify

$$H^1(X, \mathcal{O}_X) / H^1(X, \mathbb{Z}) \cong J(X).$$

This allows us to rewrite the SES as

$$0 \rightarrow J(X) \rightarrow \text{Pic}(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow 0.$$

One should note that this looks like it is telling us Abel-Jacobi, and that is true as we will make clear now.

### 18.3.1 Link to Divisors

**Theorem 18.40.**  $\text{Cl}(C) \cong \text{Pic}(C)$  naturally (when  $C$  is smooth over its field as a variety).

*Proof.* See Vakil's notes. Alternatively this is covered in more generality in "The Rising Sea" [50] (§14.2). The map  $\text{Pic}(C) \rightarrow \text{Cl}(C)$  is  $L \mapsto (s)$ , where  $s$  is a non-zero section of  $L$ , and the map  $\text{Cl}(C) \rightarrow \text{Pic}(C)$  is  $D \mapsto \mathcal{O}_X(D)$ . The content of the proof is checking that the sheaf  $\mathcal{O}_X(D)$  is invertible, so a line bundle, and that the two maps commute.  $\square$

**Corollary 18.41.** We get a group homomorphism  $\deg : \text{Pic}(C) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  giving the degree of the corresponding divisor in  $\text{Cl}(C)$ .

**Corollary 18.42.**  $\text{Pic}(\mathbb{P}^1) \cong \mathbb{Z}$ .

**Proposition 18.43.**  $\text{Pic}(\mathbb{P}^1)$  is generated by  $\mathcal{O}(1)$ .

**Notation.** We denote the isomorphism class of line bundles degree  $d$  as  $\text{Pic}^d(C)$

**Remark.** With this new notation we may rephrase the corollary of the Abel-Jacobi theorem to say  $J(C) \cong \text{Pic}^0(C)$ .

**Remark.** This degree is exactly the degree we just found above, but now the calculation is concrete. Hence we really see that the SES said that  $J(C) \cong \deg^{-1}(0) = \text{Pic}^0(X) \subset \text{Pic}(X)$ .

### 18.3.2 Square Roots

We can also ask about division in the Picard group:

**Definition 18.44.** A **square root** of  $L \in \text{Pic}(X)$  is  $\tilde{L} \in \text{Pic}(X)$  s.t.  $\tilde{L}^{\otimes 2} = L$ . Under the isomorphism to the divisor class group this is a solution to  $2D_{\tilde{L}} = D_L$ .

**Proposition 18.45.** We have the following results about square-roots:

- $L$  has a square-root iff  $\deg L$  is even
- If  $L$  is a line bundle on  $X$ ,  $g(X) = g$ , then if  $L$  has a square-root it has exactly  $2^{2g}$  square-roots.

*Proof.* Find reference for the first point. If we think about the SES of sheaves

$$0 \rightarrow \{\pm 1\} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X^\times \xrightarrow{\text{square}} \mathcal{O}_X^\times \rightarrow 0$$

we get a corresponding LES of cohomology with relevant section:

$$H^0(X, \mathcal{O}_X^\times) \rightarrow H^1(X, \{\pm 1\}) \rightarrow \text{Pic}(X) \xrightarrow{\otimes^2} \text{Pic}(X) \rightarrow H^2(X, \{\pm 1\})$$

Hence the obstruction to taking square roots comes from the cohomology  $H^2(X, \{\pm 1\})$ . This corresponds to whether the degree is odd or even.

For the second point, note that if we had two square roots  $\tilde{L}_1, \tilde{L}_2$ , then  $M = \tilde{L}_1 \otimes \tilde{L}_2^{-1}$  satisfies  $M^{\otimes 2} = \mathcal{O}$ . These are the torsion elements of the Picard group. We know  $\deg M = 0$  so  $M \in \text{Pic}^0(X) \cong J(X)$ . The torsion elements thus correspond to the half-period elements of the Jacobian lattice.  $\square$

**Example 18.46.** A square root of the canonical bundle  $K = \mathcal{O}(-2)$  on  $\mathbb{CP}^1$  is  $\mathcal{O}(-1)$ . This example can be understood well in terms of the corresponding divisors. The canonical divisor comes from  $dz$ , which has a double pole, so  $K = -2P$  (where  $P$  is a point in  $\mathbb{P}^1$ ). The square root then corresponds to the divisor  $-P$ . These solutions are visually unique, and we know that to be so from the previous prop.

**Remark.** It is a corollary of Riemann-Roch (18.52) that the degree of the canonical divisor is even, and so we always have square roots of the canonical bundle.

**Notation.** We will denote

$$S(X) = \{L \in \text{Pic}(X) \mid L^{\otimes 2} = K_X\}$$

Note that by the proof of 18.45 we have  $S(X) \cong H^1(X, F_2)$ , where we are now denoting  $F_2$  for the field of two elements. Moreover,  $S(X)$  is an affine space over  $F_2$  modelled on  $H^1(X, F_2)$ .

**Definition 18.47.** A **theta characteristic** is a characteristic class  $\Theta$  s.t.  $2\Theta = c_1(K)$ , i.e. a characteristic class corresponding to a square-root of the canonical bundle.

**Remark.** It is the case (see nlab) that if a theta characteristic corresponds to a polarising line bundle, then the sections of this bundle are theta functions.

## 18.4 Riemann-Roch and Weierstrass Points

We now restrict to considering compact Riemann surfaces  $X$ , and denote the field of meromorphic functions on  $X$  by  $H^0(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ .

**Remark.** There are lots of different notations used for the field of meromorphic functions on  $X$ , for example Farkas & Kra use  $\mathcal{H}(X)$ . By writing it in sheaf cohomology notation, we make connections with Griffiths.

Note also in this section we will use the additive presentation of divisors. This goes against Farkas & Kra who use multiplicative notation.

**Definition 18.48.** Given divisor  $D$  on  $X$  we define the  $\mathbb{C}$ -vector space

$$L(D) = \{f \in H^0(\mathcal{O}_X) \mid (f) + D \geq 0\} = H^0(X, \mathcal{O}_X(D))$$

We denote  $\dim L(D) = l(D)$ .

**Remark.** This convention, agreeing with Wikipedia and Griffiths, differs from Farkas & Kra, who would have  $r(D) = l(-D)$ .

**Lemma 18.49.**  $l(D) = \dim |D| + 1$ .

*Proof.* See Hartshorne, prop 7.7. The idea is that a section  $s$  gives a divisor  $(s)$ , and two sections have the same divisor iff they are a constant multiple of each other.  $\square$

**Definition 18.50.** Given  $D \in \text{Div}(X)$  we define the **index of speciality** of the divisor  $D$  to be  $i(D) = \dim \Omega(D)$  where

$$\Omega(D) = \{\omega \mid \omega \text{ an abelian differential, } (\omega) \geq D\}.$$

We call a divisor  $D$  **special** if  $i(D) > 0$ . Otherwise  $D$  is **non-special**

We now state some simple-to-prove results.

**Proposition 18.51.** *We have the following results about  $L$ :*

- Given  $C, D \in \text{Div}(X)$ ,  $C \leq D \Rightarrow L(C) \subseteq L(D)$
- $L(0) = \mathbb{C} \Rightarrow l(0) = 1$ .
- Given  $D \in \text{Div}(X)$ ,  $\deg(D) < 0 \Rightarrow l(D) = 0$ .
- $i(D) = l(K - D)$  where  $K$  is the canonical divisor.
- $\Omega(0) = H^0(X, K_X) \Rightarrow i(0) = g$ .
- $l(D)$  and  $i(D)$  depend only on the divisor class group of  $D$

*Proof.* [20], §III.4. □

**Theorem 18.52** (Riemann-Roch).  $l(D) = \deg(D) - g + 1 + i(D)$ .

This theorem can be generalised in the following way

**Theorem 18.53.** *If  $E \rightarrow X$  is a rank- $r$  vector bundle over a compact Riemann surface, then*

$$\dim H^0(X, E) - \dim H^1(X, E) = \deg E + r(1 - g).$$

*Proof.* See [27] for a nice proof by induction. □

**Remark.** *One should be able to see that the first version is just when taking  $E = L$  a line bundle with associated divisor  $D$ .*

**Corollary 18.54.**  $\deg K = 2g - 2$ .

*Proof.*  $\deg K = l(K) + g - 1 - i(K) = i(0) + g - 1 - l(0) = 2g - 2$ . □

**Corollary 18.55.** *If  $\deg D > 2g - 2$ ,  $D$  is nonspecial.*

*Proof.*  $\deg D > 2g - 2 \Rightarrow \deg(K - D) < 0 \Rightarrow i(D) = l(K - D) = 0$ . □

**Corollary 18.56** (Clifford's Theorem).  $2[l(D) - 1] \leq \deg(D)$ .

**Proposition 18.57.** *A generic divisor  $D$  with  $\deg D \geq g$  is nonspecial.*

*Proof.* See [16]. □

**Corollary 18.58.** *The Abel map  $A^{(g)}$  is a local homeomorphism at a generic divisor*

*Proof.* By lemma 18.26 and Riemann-Roch the rank of the Abel map at  $D$  is  $g - i(D)$ . By the previous prop 18.57 a generic divisor has  $i(D) = 0$ , and the  $\dim J = g$ . □

Now using the above proposition 18.51 and Riemann-Roch, note that for  $p \in X$  we have that the sequence  $\{l(kp)\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$  goes

$$1, \underbrace{?, \dots, ?}_{1 \leq k \leq 2g-2}, g, g+1, \dots$$

It is known that this sequence can increase by a maximum of 1 from term to term. This observation leads to the following result:

**Theorem 18.59** (Weierstrass Gap Theorem, Mondal's thesis). *Let  $X$  be a compact genus- $g$  Riemann surface, then  $\forall p \in X \exists!$  integers  $\{n_i\}_{i=1}^g$  s.t.*

$$1 = n_1 < n_2 < \cdots < n_g < 2g$$

*and that  $\nexists f$  s.t.  $(f) = -n_i p$*

*Proof.* As there are  $2g - 1$  step for  $l(kp)$  to increase from 1 to  $g$ , and it can only increase in step of 1, there must be  $g$  steps where  $l(kp)$  remains constant. The  $n_i$  are the locations of the **gaps** where  $L((n_i - 1)p) = L(n_i p)$ . If there existed  $f$  s.t.  $(f) = -n_i p$ , then  $f \in L(n_i p)$  but  $f \notin L((n_i - 1)p)$  so we get the later condition. It is a result that if  $\exists f$  s.t.  $(f) = -p$ , then  $X \cong \mathbb{P}^1$ , in which case  $g = 0$  and the result is vacuous, so we automatically know  $n_1 = 1$ .  $\square$

**Definition 18.60.** *The **weight** of  $p \in X$  is*

$$w_p = \sum_{i=1}^g (n_i - i).$$

$p \in X$  is a **Weierstrass point** if  $w_p \neq 0$  (note that  $w_p \geq 0$ , so at a Weierstrass point it is positive). We will sometimes denote the set of Weierstrass points as  $W = W(X)$ .

**Remark.** *Given Riemann-Roch, studying Weierstrass points may seem natural, but from a historical perspective they came well before. More on the history of Weierstrass points can be found in [14].*

We have results about the abundance of Weierstrass points:

**Proposition 18.61** ([20]). *We have*

- *The set of Weierstrass points is discrete*
- $\sum_{p \in X} w_p = g^3 - g$
- *If  $g \geq 2$  the number of Weierstrass points  $|W|$  satisfies*

$$2g + 2 \leq |W| \leq g^3 - g,$$

*attaining the lower bound iff  $X$  is hyperelliptic, where the Weierstrass points are the branch points. Generically a Riemann surface will have  $|W| = g^3 - g$ .*

The next result gives a link between Weierstrass points and symmetry:

**Theorem 18.62.** *Automorphisms of compact Riemann surfaces permute Weierstrass points, that is we get a group homomorphism  $\text{Aut}(X) \rightarrow S_W$ .*

*Proof.* See Mondal's master's thesis.  $\square$

A useful result for showing a point is Weierstrass is the following.

**Proposition 18.63** ([39]). *If an automorphism of a compact Riemann surface, genus  $g \geq 2$ , fixes more than 4 points then these fixed points are Weierstrass points.*

*Proof.* For more papers discussing this result, see [41, 35].  $\square$



## 18.5 Subcanonical Points

Write on this, e.g. [10].

## 18.6 Theta Function

Recall the Siegel upper half space from definition 16.43. We are now going to define theta functions, using the definition in [20]. Note that this is not uniform over all sources, and so to be on your toes.

**Definition 18.64.** We define *Riemann's theta function*  $\theta : \mathbb{C}^g \times \mathbb{H}_g \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  as

$$\theta(z|\tau) = \sum_{N \in \mathbb{Z}^g} \exp \left[ 2\pi i \left( \frac{1}{2} n^T \tau n + n^T z \right) \right].$$

**Remark.** If we want to talk about the theta function on a given Riemann surface, we always mean taking the parameter  $\tau$  to be the Riemann matrix of the surface.

**Remark.** In the case  $g = 1$  this is the theta function defined and discussed in §23.3.

**Proposition 18.65.**  $\theta$  converges absolutely and uniformly on compact subsets of  $\mathbb{C}^g \times \mathbb{H}_g$ .

*Proof.* See [20]. □

**Proposition 18.66** (Periodicity). Let  $\mu, \mu' \in \mathbb{Z}^g$ . Then

$$\forall (z, \tau) \in \mathbb{C}^g \times \mathbb{H}_g, \theta(z + \mu' + \tau\mu|\tau) = \exp \left[ 2\pi i \left( -\mu^T z - \frac{1}{2} \mu^T z \mu \right) \right] \theta(z|\tau).$$

**Corollary 18.67.** The equation  $\theta(z) = 0$  is well defined when we take the equivalence class of  $z$  in the Jacobian.

**Proposition 18.68.**  $\forall (z, \tau) \in \mathbb{C}^g \times \mathbb{H}_g, \theta(z|\tau) = \theta(-z|\tau)$ .

We can extend the definition of the Riemann theta function slightly.

**Definition 18.69.** We define the *first order theta function with characteristic*  $\begin{bmatrix} \epsilon \\ \epsilon' \end{bmatrix}$ ,  $\epsilon, \epsilon' \in \mathbb{R}^g$  to be  $\theta[\begin{smallmatrix} \epsilon \\ \epsilon' \end{smallmatrix}](z|\tau)$  defined s.t.

$$\theta \begin{bmatrix} 2\epsilon \\ 2\epsilon' \end{bmatrix} (z|\tau) = \sum_{N \in \mathbb{Z}^g} \exp \left[ 2\pi i \left( \frac{1}{2} (n + \epsilon)^T \tau (n + \epsilon) + (n + \epsilon)^T (z + \epsilon') \right) \right].$$

**Example 18.70.**  $\theta \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \theta$ .

The case when the characteristics are integers is especially important by the following result.

**Proposition 18.71.** Let  $\epsilon, \epsilon' \in \mathbb{Z}^g$ , and let  $e^{(k)}, \tau^{(k)}$  be the  $k$ th columns of  $I_g, \tau$  respectively. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\theta \begin{bmatrix} \epsilon \\ \epsilon' \end{bmatrix} (z + e^{(k)} | \tau) &= \exp \left[ 2\pi i \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{2} \right) \right] \theta \begin{bmatrix} \epsilon \\ \epsilon' \end{bmatrix} (z | \tau), \\ \theta \begin{bmatrix} \epsilon \\ \epsilon' \end{bmatrix} (z + \tau^{(k)} | \tau) &= \exp \left[ 2\pi i \left( -z_k - \frac{\tau_{kk}}{2} - \frac{\epsilon'_k}{2} \right) \right] \theta \begin{bmatrix} \epsilon \\ \epsilon' \end{bmatrix} (z | \tau), \\ \theta \begin{bmatrix} \epsilon \\ \epsilon' \end{bmatrix} (-z | \tau) &= \exp \left[ 2\pi i \left( \frac{\epsilon^T \epsilon'}{2} \right) \right] \theta \begin{bmatrix} \epsilon \\ \epsilon' \end{bmatrix} (z | \tau), \\ \forall \nu, \nu' \in \mathbb{Z}^g, \theta \begin{bmatrix} \epsilon + 2\nu \\ \epsilon' + 2\nu' \end{bmatrix} (z | \tau) &= \exp \left[ 2\pi i \left( \frac{\epsilon^T \nu'}{2} \right) \right] \theta \begin{bmatrix} \epsilon \\ \epsilon' \end{bmatrix} (z | \tau).\end{aligned}$$

**Corollary 18.72.** Up to a sign, there are exactly  $2^{2g}$  different theta functions with integer characteristics, of which  $2^{g-1}(2^g + 1)$  are even and  $2^{g-1}(2^g - 1)$  are odd.

The important theorem about theta functions is to follow. We will define a necessary (and often not explicitly named) concept first.

**Definition 18.73.** The **Riemann constant vector** of a Riemann surface with homology basis  $\mathbf{c} = (\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$  and Abel map  $A$  with basepoint  $P_0$  is  $\mathbf{K} = \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{c}, P_0)$  a vector with components

$$K_j = \frac{1 + \tau_{jj}}{2} - \sum_{k \neq j} \oint_{a_k} \omega_k(Q) A_j(Q).$$

**Proposition 18.74.**  $\mathbf{K}(P) = \mathbf{K}(P_0) + (g - 1)A(P)$ , where  $A$  has basepoint  $P_0$ .

*Proof.* Suppose we have normalised our differentials s.t.  $\int_{a_j} \omega_i = \delta_{ij}$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}(K_P)_j &= \frac{1 + \tau_{jj}}{2} - \sum_{k \neq j} \oint_{a_k} \omega_k(Q) (A_P(Q))_j, \\ &= \frac{1 + \tau_{jj}}{2} - \sum_{k \neq j} \oint_{a_k} \omega_k(Q) [(A_{P_0}(Q))_j + (A_P(P_0))_j], \\ &= (K_{P_0})_j - (A_P(P_0))_j \sum_{k \neq j} \oint_{a_k} \omega_k, \\ &\Rightarrow K_P = K_{P_0} + (g - 1)A_{P_0}(P).\end{aligned}$$

□

**Remark.** For more on the vector  $\mathbf{K}$  and its calculation, see Deconick's 'Computing the Riemann Constant Vector'.

**Theorem 18.75.** Let  $X$  be a compact, genus- $g$  Riemann surface with canonical homology basis  $\mathbf{c} = (\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$ , Riemann matrix  $\tau$  wrt said basis, and Abel map  $A$  with basepoint  $P_0$ . Then  $\theta[\frac{\epsilon}{\epsilon'}] \circ A$  is either identically 0 or has exactly  $g$  zeros.

Given this map has exactly  $g$  zeros, call them  $P_i$  and the divisor  $D = \sum_i P_i$ , then

$$A(D) = -\frac{1}{2}\tau\epsilon - \frac{1}{2}\epsilon' + \tau n + m - \mathbf{K}$$

for some  $n, m \in \mathbb{Z}^g$ . In particular, as  $\tau n + m \equiv 0$  in the Jacobian, we have

$$A(D) + \mathbf{K} = -\frac{1}{2} [\tau \epsilon + \epsilon'] .$$

*Proof.* See [20], §VI.2.4, pp.288-290. □

**Corollary 18.76** (RVT [19]). *If, for  $e \in \mathbb{C}^g$ , the (multivalued) function  $\psi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  given by  $P \mapsto \theta(A(P) - e)$  is not identically 0 it has  $g$  zeros  $\{P_i\}$  and then, letting  $D = \sum_i P_i$ ,*

$$A(D) + \mathbf{K} = e .$$

**Remark.** *The name **Riemann Vanishing Theorem (RVT)** is used in [19] to describe the above result. This is not universally used, even if the result is classical. We will continue to use the convention we have just started, of any time there is a result called the Riemann vanishing theorem, we will label it as such with a source.*

**Remark.** *Evaluating theta functions at the AJ map of a point is a common occurrence, so in their Lectures on Compact Riemann Surfaces, Eynad introduces the notation  $g_{\zeta, Q}$  for the the map  $X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , depending on parameters  $\zeta \in \mathbb{C}^g$ ,  $Q \in X$ , given by*

$$P \mapsto \theta(A(P) - A(Q) + \zeta) .$$

To make the above corollary even more powerful, we now give a simple lemma.

**Lemma 18.77.** *The theta function on  $X$  does not vanish identically on any open subset of  $S^g X$ .*

*Proof.* This is a corollary of corollary 18.58, and that  $\theta$  is not identically zero as a function of  $J(X)$  on any open subsets. □

## 18.6.1 Generalised Theta Functions

Note that one can think of theta functions on a generic complex torus by thinking about the factors of automorphy - the scale facts introduced to the function when adding a lattice vector to the argument. For more on these see [5] and [2].

## 18.7 Theta Divisor

We will now approach the topic of the theta divisor, defined later, from two directions. That of [27], and that of [20]. I find that of Hitchin more intuitive, so I will start there, and then we will see its connection to the theta function.

### 18.7.1 Via Line Bundles

We start with an important prop about the direct image of sheaves on a Riemann surface.

**Proposition 18.78.** *Take a map of Riemann surfaces  $f : X \rightarrow X'$  and a line bundle  $L \rightarrow X$ . We have*

$$\bullet H^0(X', f_* \mathcal{O}(L)) \cong H^0(X, \mathcal{O}(L)),$$

- $\exists E \rightarrow X'$  a rank- $r$  holomorphic vector bundle s.t.  $f_*\mathcal{O}(L) = \mathcal{O}(E)$ , where  $r = \deg f$ , and
- if  $V \rightarrow X'$  is a holomorphic vector bundle, then  $f_*\mathcal{O}(L \otimes f^*V) \cong \mathcal{O}(E \otimes V)$ .

*Proof.* See [27, 25]. □

Note in the above, we take  $\deg f = \deg(f^*L_p)$  for any  $p \in X'$ . About such an  $E$ , we can say the following things.

**Proposition 18.79.**  $\deg E = \deg L + (1 - g) - \deg f(1 - g')$ .

*Proof.* This comes from Riemann-Roch. We have

$$\begin{aligned} h^0(X', E) - h^1(X', E) &= \deg E + r(1 - g'), \\ h^0(X, L) - h^1(X, L) &= \deg L + (1 - g). \end{aligned}$$

From the previous prop we know  $r = \deg f$ ,  $h^0(X', E) = h^0(X, L)$ ,  $h^1(X', E) = h^1(X, L)$  (the last of these requiring Serre duality). The result then follows. □

Moreover we can specify further if  $X' = \mathbb{P}^1$ .

**Proposition 18.80.** Suppose  $\deg E = 0$ . Then  $E$  is trivial iff  $L(-1) := L \otimes f^*\mathcal{O}(-1)$  has no non-trivial holomorphic sections.

In the situation above, we know  $\deg L = r + g - 1 \Rightarrow \deg L(-1) = g - 1$  (as  $\deg f^*\mathcal{O}(-1) = -\deg f$ ). We can define a map into the space of degree- $(g - 1)$  line bundles as

$$\begin{aligned} S^{g-1}X &\rightarrow \text{Pic}^{g-1}(X), \\ (p_1, \dots, p_{g-1}) &\mapsto L_{p_1} \otimes \dots \otimes L_{p_{g-1}}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $S^{g-1}X$  is the  $(g - 1)$ -fold symmetric product.

**Lemma 18.81.** If  $L \in \text{Pic}(X)$  has a section  $s$  with simple zeros at  $p_1, \dots, p_{g-1}$  (points may be repeated) then  $L \cong L_{p_1} \otimes \dots \otimes L_{p_{g-1}}$ .

*Proof.*  $s \otimes s_{p_1}^{-1} \otimes \dots \otimes s_{p_{g-1}}^{-1}$  is a trivialising section of  $L \otimes L_{p_1}^{-1} \otimes \dots \otimes L_{p_{g-1}}^{-1}$ . □

**Proposition 18.82.** This map has codimension-1 image

*Proof.*  $\dim(S^{g-1}X) = g - 1$ , and as  $\text{Pic}^{g-1}(X) \cong J(X)$ , it has dimension  $g$ . We also know the map is injective. □

**Remark.**  $\text{Pic}^{g-1}(X)$  does not naturally have a group law, unlike  $J(X)$ . In fact,  $\text{Pic}^{g-1}$  is a  $\text{Pic}^0$ -torsor.

**Definition 18.83.** We call the image of the map  $S^{g-1}X \rightarrow \text{Pic}(X)$  the **theta divisor**  $\Theta$ .

By the above, we know that a generic  $L(-1) \in \text{Pic}^{g-1}(X)$  will not lie in the theta divisor, so will not have a non-trivial section, hence  $E$  will be trivial. In  $\Theta$ , the  $a_i$  is the Birkhoff decomposition of  $E$  will be non-zero, so they will have discontinuities on here.

### 18.7.2 Via the Theta Functions

We star this subsection with a theorem

**Theorem 18.84.** *For  $e \in \mathbb{C}^g$ ,  $\theta(e) = 0 \Leftrightarrow e \in W_{g-1} + \mathbf{K}$ . Moreover, if  $e = A(D) + \mathbf{K}$  for  $D \in S^{g-1}X$  and  $i(D) = s \geq 1$  then  $\theta(W_{s-1} - W_{s-1} - e) \equiv 0$ . Conversely, if  $s$  is the least integer s.t.  $\theta(W_{s-1} - W_{s-1} - e) \equiv 0$  and  $\theta(W_s - W_s - e) \not\equiv 0$ , then  $e = A(D) + \mathbf{K}$  for some  $D \in S^{g-1}X$ ,  $i(D) = s$ .*

*Proof.* See [20], pp.291-293. In essence the idea of the first part is that using corollary 18.76 the zeros of  $\theta$  should be at

$$A(P_i) - \left[ A \left( \sum_j P_j \right) + \mathbf{K} \right] = -A \left( \sum_{j \neq i} P_j \right) - \mathbf{K}.$$

As the  $\theta$  function is even, this gives a zero in  $W_{g-1} + \mathbf{K}$ . The latter part drops out of the proof. Note when we say  $W_s - W_s$  we mean the space  $\{f - h \mid f, h \in W_s\}$ .  $\square$

It should be clear that the  $g - 1$  dimensional space  $W_{g-1} + \mathbf{K}$  is going to correspond to the theta divisor, we will see exactly how later. As a result of this proof, we get necessary and sufficient conditions on the vanishing of  $\theta$ .

**Theorem 18.85.** *Recall the function  $\psi(P) = \theta(A(P) - e)$  for fixed  $e \in \mathbb{C}^g$ . Then*

- *if  $e \in J(X)$  and  $\psi \equiv 0$  then  $e = A(D) + \mathbf{K}$  for some  $D \in S^g X$  with  $i(D) = s$  the least integer s.t.*

$$\theta(W_{s+1} - W_s - e) \not\equiv 0,$$

*and*

- *if  $e = A(D) + \mathbf{K}$  for  $D \in S^g X$ , then  $\psi \not\equiv 0 \Leftrightarrow i(D) > 0$ , and  $D$  is the divisor of  $\psi$ .*

We have seen that given a zero of  $\theta$ ,  $e = A(D) + \mathbf{K}$ , we must have  $\theta(W_{s-1} - W_{s-1} - e) \equiv 0$  when  $s = i(D) \geq 1$ . We now want this condition to provide us even more information about  $\theta$ .

**Theorem 18.86** (RVT [20]). *Let  $s$  be the least integer s.t.  $\theta(W_{s-1} - W_{s-1} - e) \equiv 0$  but  $\theta(W_s - W_s - e) \not\equiv 0$ , then all partial derivatives of order  $< s$  of  $\theta$  vanish at  $e$ , and at least one partial derivative of order  $s$  doesn't vanish at  $e$ .*

*Conversely, if all partials of order  $< s$ , but not all of order  $s$ , vanish at  $e$ , then  $s$  is the least integer s.t.  $\theta(W_{s-1} - W_{s-1} - e) \equiv 0$  and  $\theta(W_s - W_s - e) \not\equiv 0$*

*Proof.* See [20], §VI.3.5, pp.294-298. For the first part in essence we induct after showing  $(\partial\theta/\partial z_j)(W_{s-2} - W_{s-2} - e) \equiv 0$  ( $z_j$  a coordinate about  $-e$ ) and then use even-ness.  $\square$

We can give another rephrasing of this, using the isomorphism  $\text{Cl}(X) \cong \text{Pic}(X)$ .

**Theorem 18.87** (RVT [7]). *Given a degree  $g - 1$  line bundle  $L \rightarrow X$ , let  $D$  be a divisor associated to  $L$  and  $e = A(D) + \mathbf{K}$ . The multiplicity of  $e$  as a zero of  $\theta$  is  $\text{mult}_e \theta = h^0(X, \mathcal{O}(L))$ .*

*Proof.* From the statement  $\deg(D) = g - 1$ , and so from Riemann-Roch

$$i(D) = l(D) = h^0(X, \mathcal{O}_X(D)) = h^0(X, \mathcal{O}(L)).$$

Alternatively, see [23] (under the name Riemann singularity theorem) and Eynard's lectures on compact Riemann surfaces for discussions of this and different interpretations.  $\square$

**Remark.** The above theorem complete the relation between definition 18.83 and the  $\theta$  function, namely that if  $L \in \Theta$ , then  $L$  has a section  $s$  with zeros  $p_i$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq g - 1$ , and then the divisor of this section  $D = (s) = \sum_i p_i$  satisfies  $\theta(A(D) + \mathbf{K}) = 0$ . This means the divisor of the theta function on  $\mathbb{C}^g$  is  $\mathbf{K} + W_{g-1}$ .

**Proposition 18.88.** If  $f \neq 0$  is a meromorphic function with divisor  $\sum_i n_i P_i$  and  $\zeta$  is a non-singular element of the theta divisor, then  $\exists C \in \mathbb{C}^*$  s.t.

$$f(P) = C \prod g_{\zeta, P_i}(P)^{n_i}.$$

We have thus related the zeros of the  $\theta$ . This is done through the following theorem.

**Theorem 18.89.** Let  $D$  be a divisor with  $\deg D = 2g - 2$  on a Riemann surface with genus  $g \geq 1$ . Then  $D = (\omega)$  for  $\omega$  a meromorphic differential iff  $A(D) = -2\mathbf{K}$ .

*Proof.* We first want to show that  $-2\mathbf{K}$  is in the image of the canonical divisor class (motivating the notation). Take a generic divisor  $E$  with  $\deg E = g - 1$ . Then  $e = A(E) + \mathbf{K}$  is a zero of  $\theta$ , so  $-e$  is also a zero, and hence  $-e = A(E') + \mathbf{K}$  for some other divisor  $E'$  with  $\deg E' = g - 1$ . Hence

$$0 = e - e = A(E) + A(E') + 2\mathbf{K} \Rightarrow -2\mathbf{K} = A(E + E').$$

It remains to show  $E + E'$  is a divisor corresponding to a differential. By lemma III.8.15, p.119 of [20], we have  $l(E + E') \geq g$ , and so by Riemann-Roch

$$i(E + E') = l(E + E') - \deg(E + E') + g - 1 \geq 1.$$

Hence  $E + E' = (\omega)$ . **Why does this mean there is a meromorphic differential?**

Conversely, if  $D$  is a divisor s.t.  $A(D) = -2\mathbf{K}$ , then by Abel's theorem  $A(D) = A((\omega)) \Rightarrow D \sim (\omega) \Rightarrow D - (\omega) = (f)$  for some meromorphic function  $f$  on  $X$ . Hence  $D = (f\omega)$ .  $\square$

**Remark.** The above result explains the naming behind the term theta characteristic.  $D$  is a divisor s.t.  $2D = K$  iff  $A(D) = \frac{1}{2}A(K) = -\mathbf{K} \Leftrightarrow A(D) + \mathbf{K} = 0$ . Hence theta characteristics correspond exactly to the zeros of the theta divisor. We know from 18.75 that these correspond to half-lattice vectors in the Jacobian. Moreover, Theorem 18.87 shows us that for a theta characteristic  $D$ ,  $h^0(X, \mathcal{O}(D)) = \text{mult}_0 \theta$ . The value of this mod 2 is exactly controlled by whether  $\theta$  is odd or even. Hence the parity of  $h^0(X, \mathcal{O}(D))$  is sometimes used as the definition. The exact value of  $h^0$  has received a lot of study, see [4].

**Remark.** Chris Swierczewski, of abelfunctions fame, asked a question on mathoverflow (see here) about finding solutions to  $-2\mathbf{K} = A(D)$  given  $\mathbf{K}$ . For an answer, see [8].

### 18.7.3 Calculating the Riemann Constant Vector

One may attempt to calculate the RCV both analytically and numerically. The latter was done using abelfunctions in [13]. It worked by using two facts:

1.  $\mathbf{K} = A(K_X) + \mathbf{h}$  where  $\mathbf{h} = \frac{1}{2}\Omega\mathbf{n}$  is a half-period vector, so given a way to numerically calculate the AJ map, we can find  $\mathbf{K}$  up to a half-period, and
2.  $D \in S^{g-1}X \Rightarrow \theta(A(D) + \mathbf{K}) = 0$ , and so we can use the theta function to eliminate possible half-periods.

To calculate  $\mathbf{K}$  analytically, one needs to use symmetry properties, for example the following lemma.

**Lemma 18.90** ([8]). *Let  $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(X)$  be an order- $N$  symmetry, acting on periods via the matrix  $L$  s.t  $(L - I)$  is invertible, and let  $Q$  be a fixed point of  $\sigma$ , then  $\mathbf{K}_Q$  is a  $2N$ -torsion point in the Jacobian.*

*Proof.* Letting  $\Delta$  be the divisor of the Szégo kernel, we have  $\mathbf{K}_Q = A_Q(\Delta)$ , and so

$$2\mathbf{K}_Q = \int_Q^{2\Delta} \omega.$$

Hence acting via  $\sigma$

$$\begin{aligned} 2L\mathbf{K}_Q &= \int_Q^{2\Delta} \sigma^* \omega = \int_{\sigma(Q)}^{\sigma(2\Delta)} \omega, \\ \Rightarrow 2(L - I)\mathbf{K}_Q &= \int_{2\Delta}^{\sigma(2\Delta)} \omega. \end{aligned}$$

Using the fact that  $2\Delta \sim K_X$ , we know it's divisor class is invariant under  $\sigma$ , and so the latter integral is 0 mod the lattice, so is  $\Omega\mathbf{n}$  in  $\mathbb{C}^g$ . Letting  $M$  be the action on homology corresponding to  $\sigma$  we have  $L\Omega = \Omega M$ , and so

$$2\mathbf{K}_Q = (L - I)^{-1}\Omega\mathbf{n} = \Omega(M - I)^{-1}\mathbf{n} = \Omega \left[ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^{N-1} kM^k \right] \mathbf{n}.$$

This RHS expression is again  $\Omega$  times by an integer vector up to a factor of  $1/N$ . □

**Remark.** *In the above proof, note that as  $M^N = I$ , we have  $\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} M^k = 0$ , and so*

$$\begin{aligned} (M - I) \sum_{k=1}^{N-1} kM^k &= \sum_{k=1}^{N-1} k(M^{k+1} - M^k), \\ &= \left( \sum_{l=2}^N (l-1)M^l \right) - \left( \sum_{k=1}^{N-1} kM^k \right), \\ &= (N-1)M^N - \sum_{k=1}^{N-1} M^k, \\ &= (N-1)I - (-I) = NI, \\ \Rightarrow \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^{N-1} kM^k &= (M - I)^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

## 18.8 Jacobi Inversion

An important idea in classical integrable systems is that of action-angle variables. In order to find these variables, one will end up needing to solve abelian integrals. This will turn out to be theoretically possible because of the following bit of classical theory.

**Theorem 18.91** (Jacobi Inversion Theorem). *There is a bijection*

$$\begin{aligned} W_g &\rightarrow J, \\ D &\mapsto A(D) + \mathbf{K}. \end{aligned}$$

## 18.9 Baker-Akhiezer Functions

We will start with a review of the material contained in [16, 17].

Our set up will be as follows, suppose we have a Riemann surface  $S$  with  $g(S) = g$ .

**Definition 18.92.** *About  $Q_i \in S$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , introduce a coordinate  $z_i = z_i(P)$  s.t.  $z_i(Q_i) = 0$ , and denote  $k_i = z_i^{-1}$ . Let  $\delta = \sum_{i=1}^N \delta_i$  be a positive divisor on  $S \setminus \{Q_i\}$  and  $\{q_i\}_{i=1}^n$  a set of polynomial. A **Baker-Akhiezer function** corresponding to the data  $(Q_i, k_i, \delta, q_i)$  is a function  $\Psi$  s.t.*

- $\Psi$  is meromorphic on  $S \setminus \{Q_i\}$ ,
- $(\Psi|_{S \setminus \{Q_i\}}) + \delta \geq 0$ , and
- $\Psi(P)e^{-q_i(k_i(P))}$  is analytic in a neighbourhood of  $Q_i$ .

Fixing  $Q, k, q$ , we denote the vector space of Baker-Akhiezer functions for a divisor  $\delta$  as  $\Lambda(\delta)$ .

**Example 18.93.** *If  $S$  is an elliptic curve given by  $w^2 = 4z^3 - g_2z - g_3$  (see [Elliptic Curves](#) for more detail) then we take the appropriate torus lattice with coordinate  $u$  and parameterise as  $z = \wp(u), w = \wp'(u)$ . Take  $Q = \{u = 0\}$  and  $q(k) = xk$  for some parameter  $x \in \mathbb{C}$ . As  $g(S) = 1$  the divisor is a single point  $\delta = (\wp(u_1), \wp'(u_1))$ . The Baker-Akhiezer function in this case is*

$$\Psi(P) = \Psi(u; x) = \frac{\sigma(u - u_1 - x)e^{x\zeta(u)}}{\sigma(u - u_1)\sigma(u_1 + x)},$$

where  $\sigma, \zeta$  are the corresponding Weierstrass functions.

**Remark.** *We can allow the divisor  $\delta$  to contain the point  $Q$  if we want, and if it is present with multiplicity  $n$ , then we know as  $P \rightarrow Q$*

$$\Psi(P) \sim e^{q(k)} [ck^n + \mathcal{O}(k^{n-1})]$$

for some  $c \in \mathbb{C}$ .

**Proposition 18.94.**  $\Psi \in \Lambda(\delta), (f) = \delta' - \delta \Rightarrow f\Psi \in \Lambda(\delta')$ .

**Lemma 18.95.** *A Baker-Akhiezer function has  $N$  zeros on  $S$ ,  $\{\delta'_i\}_{i=1}^N$ . Letting  $\delta' = \sum \delta'_i$  we have*

$$A(\delta') = A(\delta) - \sum_{j=1}^n U_{q_j}, \quad (18.9.1)$$



where  $\mathbf{U}_q = (U_{q,1}, \dots, U_{q,g})$  is the vector given by

$$U_{q,j} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{b_j} \Omega_q,$$

$\{a_j, b_j\}$  a canonical homology basis,  $\Omega_q$  the normalised abelian differential of the second kind s.t.

- $\Omega_{q_j} \sim dq_j + \mathcal{O}(k_j^{-2})dk_j$  as  $k_j \rightarrow \infty$  and
- $\forall 1 \leq j \leq g, \oint_{a_j} \Omega_q = 0$ .

Conversely, if two divisors  $\delta, \delta'$  satisfy 18.9.1, then they are the divisors of poles and zeros of some Baker-Akhiezer function with essential singularity of the form  $\Psi(P) \sim e^{q_j(k_j)}$  as  $P \rightarrow Q_j$ .

*Proof.* The meromorphic form  $d \log \Psi$  must have as many zeros as poles counting multiplicity, and we required that  $\Psi$  only had poles on  $\delta$ . The difference then comes from requiring that  $\Psi$  is single valued, i.e that  $\oint_c d \log \Psi \in 2\pi i \mathbb{Z}$  for  $c \in \{a_j, b_j\}$ .  $\square$

**Remark.** For more on differentials, and the ability to normalise them, see [16] §2.7.

**Theorem 18.96.** If  $\delta$  is non-special, and  $q$  has ‘sufficiently small’ coefficients,  $\dim \Lambda(\delta) = N - g + 1$ .

*Proof.* See [16]. Note that the ‘sufficiently small’ condition is required s.t.  $\mathbf{U}_q$  (as defined in the previous lemma) is small, and then this gives uniqueness by requiring that  $\delta$  nonspecial  $\Rightarrow \delta'$  nonspecial.  $\square$

**Theorem 18.97.** Given  $\delta$  is nonspecial and  $N = g$ , the Baker-Akhiezer function for data  $(Q, k, \delta, q)$  on  $S$  is

$$\Psi(P) = c \exp \left( \sum_{j=1}^n \int_{P_0}^P \Omega_{q_j} \right) \frac{\theta(A(P) - A^{(g)}(D) - \mathbf{K} + \sum_j \mathbf{U}_{q_j})}{\theta(A(P) - A^{(g)}(D) - \mathbf{K})},$$

where

- $c \in \mathbb{C}$ ,
- $P_0 \notin \{Q_j\}$  is an arbitrary point in  $S$  used as the basepoint for  $A$ ,
- $\mathbf{U}_q, \Omega_q$  are as defined by lemma 18.95,
- $\mathbf{K}$  is the vector of Riemann constants, and
- the path for  $\int_{P_0}^P \Omega_q$  is the same as  $A(P)$ .

## 18.10 Prime Form

# 19 Classifying Riemann Surfaces

## 19.1 Monodromy

**Definition 19.1.** Given a  $n$ -fold covering  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and a closed path  $\gamma$  based at  $p \in Y$ , then  $\gamma$  lift to a path  $\hat{\gamma}$  in  $X$  s.t.  $f \circ \hat{\gamma} = \gamma$ . Then  $\gamma$  induces a bijection  $\sigma_\gamma : f^{-1}(p) \rightarrow f^{-1}(p)$  called the **monodromy associated to  $\gamma$** . By fixing an ordering of  $f^{-1}(p)$  we identify  $\sigma \in S_n$ .

**Remark.** The monodromy is fixed under basepoint preserving homotopies of paths, and actually we get a functor  $\Pi_1(Y) \rightarrow \text{Set}$ . See nlab for more.

## 19.2 Invariants

### 19.2.1 $j$ -invariant

**Remark.** While the  $j$ -invariant classifies elliptic curves over  $\mathbb{C}$  (or indeed  $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}$ ) up to isomorphism, this no longer holds true over smaller number fields, for example  $\mathbb{Q}$ . Many examples of this exist, for an example see [here](#)

### 19.2.2 Igusa invariants

## 20 Spin Structures

We will now want to understand two papers, by Atiyah [1] and Kallel, Sjerve [32], on spin structure on Riemann surfaces.

### 20.1 A particular quadratic form

Recall in subsection 18.3 we looked at solutions in the divisor class group to the equation  $2D = K$ . We can say some more. Recall that on a Riemann surface  $X$ , the space  $S(X)$  is affine over  $F_2$  with group of translations  $H^1(X, F_2)$  (see prop 18.45).

**Definition 20.1.** If  $A$  is an affine space over  $F_2$ , a function  $\phi : A \rightarrow F_2$  is **quadratic** if  $\forall a \in A, x, y \in T(A)$  (the v.sp of translations) the function

$$H_a : T(A) \times T(A) \rightarrow F_2$$

$$(x, y) \mapsto \phi(a + x + y) - \phi(a + x) - \phi(a + y) + \phi(a)$$

is bilinear.

**Lemma 20.2.** The associated bilinear form  $H_a$  is independent of  $a$ .

If  $\phi(a) = 0$ , and we identify  $A$  with  $T(A)$  by  $a + x \mapsto x$ ,  $\phi$  is a quadratic form on  $T(A)$  in the standard sense of a vector space, with associated bilinear form  $H$ .

**Lemma 20.3.** If  $H$  is non-degenerate it is classified by the number of zeros of  $\phi$ , or equivalently the Arf invariant.

**Theorem 20.4.** The function  $\phi : S(X) \rightarrow F_2, \phi(L) = \dim \Gamma(L) \pmod{2}$  is a quadratic function whose associated bilinear form is the cup product on  $H^1(X, F_2)$ .

In order to identify the bilinear with the cup product we just need to work out the number of zeros of the quadratic corresponding to the cup product, and the zeros of  $\phi$  which are given by the following prop

**Proposition 20.5.**  $\phi$  takes the values 0,1 at  $2^{g-1}(2^g + 1), 2^{g-1}(2^g - 1)$  points of  $S$  respectively.

*Proof.* See Mumford ([ref](#)). □

This then means they coincide.  
We can further say that

**Theorem 20.6.** Let  $\{X_t \mid t \in \mathbb{C}, |t| < 1\}$  be a holomorphic family of compact Riemann surfaces, and let  $D_t$  be a divisor class in  $X_t$  s.t.  $2D_t = K_t$ . Then  $\dim |D_t|$  is constant mod 2.

This means that the previous result does not depend on the complex structure on  $X$ .

## 20.2 Spin Structures on Riemann Surfaces

We have been introducing square-roots of the canonical bundle, and the next prop is the reason why. We need a brief lemma:

**Lemma 20.7.** *Line bundles correspond bijectively to circle bundles.*

*Proof.* See here, here, and here. It boils down to the fact that we have the map  $BU(1) \cong \mathbb{CP}^\infty$  so we get that every complex line bundle  $L \rightarrow X$  is the pullback along a map of the universal line bundle  $S^\infty \hookrightarrow \mathcal{L} \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{CP}^\infty$ . That is, we have the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{L} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{CP}^\infty \end{array}$$

□

**Proposition 20.8.** *Spin structures on a compact complex manifold correspond bijectively with isomorphism classes of line bundles  $L$  s.t  $L^{\otimes 2} \cong K$ .*

*Proof.* On an almost complex manifold we have a reduction of structure group from  $SO(2n)$  to  $U(n)$ , and we have the map  $\det : U(n) \rightarrow U(1)$ , so we can take a spin structure on  $X$  to be a cohomology class  $\xi \in H^1(U(X), F_2)$  (modulo the image of  $H^1(X, F_2)$  under  $\pi^*$ ) that restricts to the generator of  $H^1(U(1), F_2) \cong F_2$  on the fibre, where  $U(X)$  is the unit tangent bundle on  $X$ . This generator is the squaring map.

Now by the lemma we have that  $\xi$  corresponds to a continuous line bundle  $L \in \text{Pic}(X)$ , and the facts that  $\xi$  maps to the generator  $-1 \in H^1(U(1), F_2)$  means that  $L$  is the pullback of  $\mathcal{O}(-1)$  the line bundle over  $\mathbb{CP}^\infty$ . This means that we must have an isomorphism  $\alpha : L^{\otimes 2} \rightarrow K_X$  (as  $\mathcal{O}(-1)^{\otimes 2} = \mathcal{O}(-2) = K_{\mathbb{CP}^\infty}$ ). The holomorphic structure on  $L$  is then inherited from  $K$ , and if  $X$  is compact the holomorphic structure conversely fixes  $\alpha$  up to a scale factor, so the isomorphism is fixed. Hence we are done. □

**Fix this incorrect proof.**

**Remark.** Note in the above proof we use that  $H^1(U(1), F_2)$ , i.e. the space of  $U(1)$ , is  $\cong F_2$ . To see this, note that as  $\pi_1(S^1) = \mathbb{Z}$ , the only order 2 subgroup is  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ , so there is only one connected double cover. If we had a disconnected cover, each connected component must be a cover, and then we can only have two connected components, each a cover of degree 1.

## 20.3 Invariant Spin Structures

We will want to understand the interplay between the spin structures on a Riemann surface and it's automorphisms. We start with a generic result about quadratic forms:

**Lemma 20.9.** *Let  $V$  be a f.d. v.sp over  $F_2$  and let  $\phi : V \rightarrow F_2$  be a quadratic functions whose associated bilinear  $H$  is non-degenerate. Then any affine transform of  $V$ ,  $x \mapsto Ax + b$  which preserves  $\phi$  has a fixed point.*

*Proof.* By assumption we have

$$\phi(x) = \phi(Ax + b) = \phi(Ax) + \phi(b) + H(Ax, b)$$

Setting  $x = 0$  gives us  $\phi(b) = 0$  and so  $\phi(x) = \phi(Ax) + H(Ax, b)$ . Expanding  $H(x, y)$  then finds

$$H(x, y) = H(Ax, Ay) \Rightarrow A^*A = I$$

where  $A^*$  is the dual of  $A$  wrt to the non-degenerate inner product  $\langle x, y \rangle = H(x, y)$ . Now

$$\begin{aligned} A^*x = x &\Rightarrow Ax = x \Rightarrow H(x, b) = 0 \Rightarrow b \perp \ker(A - I)^* \\ &\Rightarrow b \in \text{Im}(A - I) \\ &\Rightarrow \exists y \in V, b = (A - I)y \\ &\Rightarrow \exists y \in V, y = Ay + b \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $y$  is a fixed point of the transform. □

Using now the quadratic  $\phi$  defined on  $S(X)$  we have the following corollary:

**Corollary 20.10.** *Any orientation-preserving diffeomorphism of a compact Riemann surface fixes at least 1 spin structure.*

It is now to ask how many such structures an automorphism can preserve, and how many automorphisms are there that preserve a given structure.

We begin with the first question:

**Theorem 20.11.** *Take  $f \in \text{Aut}(X)$ , let  $M \in SL_{2g}(\mathbb{Z})$  be the matrix representing  $f_* : H_1(X, \mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow H_1(X, \mathbb{Z})$  wrt a particular homology basis, and  $\bar{M} = M \pmod{2}$ . Spin structures invariant under  $f$  are in bijection with solutions  $x \in F_2^{2g}$  of the equation*

$$(\bar{M}^T - I)x = 0$$

*Then  $f$  leaves  $2^h$  spin structures invariant, where  $h = \dim E_1(\bar{M})$ .*

*Proof.* To do this we can see from lemma 20.9 that spin structures invariant under  $f \in \text{Aut}(X)$  correspond to solutions of  $(A - I)y = b$  where  $x \mapsto Ax + b$  is the induced transform on  $H^1(X, F_2)$  from  $f$ . Given we know we always have one solution, which we will denote  $y_0$ , we can consider the difference  $x = y - y_0$  for any other solution to see that invariant spin structures biject with solutions of

$$(A - I)x = 0$$

Now given a homology basis specifying  $M$ , we have a dual basis of  $H^1(M, \mathbb{Z})$ , and the induced transform from  $f$  is represented by the matrix  $M^T$ . If we restrict to coefficients mod 2 the corresponding effect on the transform matrix is to take the coefficients mod 2. This means we have  $A = \bar{M}^T$ . □

**Remark.** *You may, like me, have been initially confused as to why the cohomology  $H^1(X, F_2)$  has dimension  $2g$ , when we typically think of a cohomology basis as being a basis of  $g$  differentials. Note that is because the sheaf here is really the constant sheaf  $F_2$ . One can then use Poincare duality and the universal coefficient theorem.*

It is then possible to extend this to find exactly which cohomology classes  $\xi \in H^1(U(X), F_2)$  correspond to invariant spin structures. Let  $e \in H_1(U(X), F_2)$  be the homology corresponding to the  $U(1)$  generator. We can get a basis of  $H_1(U(X), F_2)$  from a basis of  $H_1(X, \mathbb{Z})$ ,  $\{\delta_i\}_{i=1}^{2g}$ , by lifting the cycles  $\delta_i$  to a cycle  $\tilde{\delta}_i$  and including  $e$ . Let  $\eta \in H^1(U(X), \mathbb{Z})$  be its dual, so our full cohomology basis of  $H^1(U(X), \mathbb{Z})$  is  $\{d_i, \eta\}$ . Denote their projection to  $H^1(U(X), F_2)$  with an overline.

**Remark.** In this basis, we have the set of spin structures is

$$\left\{ \bar{\eta} + \sum_i y_i \bar{d}_i \mid y_i \in F_2 \right\}$$

The corresponding map of  $U(X)$  induced from  $f$  only acts on the base, so the corresponding effect on  $e$  is  $f_*(e) = e$ . To calculate  $f_*(\tilde{\delta}_i)$  we need a lemma from [31]:

**Lemma 20.12.** For  $a, b \in H_1(X, \mathbb{Z})$ ,  $\widetilde{(a + b)} = \tilde{a} + \tilde{b} + (a \circ b)e$ .

**Corollary 20.13.**  $f_*(\tilde{\delta}_i) = M_{ij}\tilde{\delta}_j + b_i e$  where

$$b_i = \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < j_2} M_{ij_1} M_{ij_2} (\delta_{j_1} \circ \delta_{j_2})$$

*Proof.* We have that  $f_*(\tilde{a}) = f_*(\tilde{a})$  and so using  $f_*(\delta_i) = M_{ij}\delta_j$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} f_*(\tilde{\delta}_i) &= M_{i1}\tilde{\delta}_1 + \left( \widetilde{\sum_{j>1} M_{ij}\delta_j} \right) + \left( M_{i1}\delta_1 \circ \sum_{j>1} M_{ij}\delta_j \right) e \\ &= \dots \\ &= M_{ij}\tilde{\delta}_j + \left[ \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < j_2} M_{ij_1} M_{ij_2} (\delta_{j_1} \circ \delta_{j_2}) \right] e \end{aligned}$$

□

Using the duality condition we can work out  $f^*(\eta)$ . With this we can formulate an equation for a spin structure to be invariant.

**Theorem 20.14.** A spin structure  $\xi = \bar{\eta} + \sum_i y_i \bar{d}_i$  is invariant under  $f$  if

$$(A - I)y = b$$

with  $A = \overline{M}^T$ ,  $b = -\bar{v}$ .

From our understanding of the matrix  $A$ , we can then get a following result:

**Proposition 20.15.** If  $f$  is an automorphism of odd order  $n$ , then  $f$  leaves only 1 spin structure fixed iff the associated orbit space  $X/\mathbb{Z}_n$  has genus 0.

**Theorem 20.16.** Non-identity  $f \in \text{Aut}(X)$  preserves every spin structure iff  $X$  is hyperelliptic and  $X$  is the hyperelliptic involution.

## 21 Extended example

Here we will now take a specific curve and consider all the theory we have previously covered. To this we will effectively go through Miranda [42] and apply the relevant sections.

Define the degree-6 homogeneous polynomial  $P : \mathbb{C}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  by

$$P(x, y, z) = y^6 - x^6 + z^2 x^4$$

Define the corresponding projective plane curve

$$X = \{[x : y : z] \in \mathbb{P}^2 \mid P(x, y, z) = 0\}$$

Throughout we will want to compare our by-hand calculations with numerics in Sage, so we start by initialising  $X$ .

```
sage: x, y, z = QQ['x, y, z'].gens()
sage: X = Curve(y^6 - x^6 + z^2 * x^4)
```

### 21.1 Singularities

The corresponding affine plane curve on the intersection with the open set  $U_x = \{x \neq 0\}$  is  $y^6 = 1 - z^2$ . Hence

$$X = \{[1 : y : z] \mid y^6 = 1 - z^2\} \cup \{[0 : 0 : 1]\}$$

**Proposition 21.1.**  *$X$  is singular at  $[0 : 0 : 1]$  only.*

*Proof.* We have

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial x} = 2x^3(2z^2 - 3x^2), \quad \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 6y^5, \quad \frac{\partial P}{\partial z} = 2zx^4$$

It can be seen that a common solution to these must have  $y = 0$  from  $\partial_y P = 0$ , and then either  $z = 0$  or  $x = 0$  from  $\partial_z P = 0$ . If  $z = 0$ ,  $\partial_z P = 0$  enforces  $x = 0$  which isn't in  $\mathbb{P}^2$ . If  $x = 0$ ,  $z$  is arbitrary and we find the point  $[0 : 0 : 1] \in \mathbb{P}^2$ . This is calculated in Sage as follows:

```
sage: X.singular_points()
[(0 : 0 : 1)]
```

□

We need to get an understanding of this singularity. If we take the neighbourhood  $U_z = \{z \neq 0\}$  the corresponding affine plane curve on the intersection is

$$p(x, y) = y^6 - x^6 + x^4 = 0$$

as

$$X = \{[x : y : 1] \mid y^6 - x^6 + x^4 = 0\} \cup \{[x : y : 0] \mid y^6 - x^6 = 0\}$$

**Proposition 21.2.** *The only singular point on the affine plane curve  $p(x, y) = 0$  is  $(0, 0)$  and it is 2-monomial.*

*Proof.*  $\partial_x p(x, y) = 2x^3(2 - 3x^2)$ ,  $\partial_y p(x, y) = 6y^5$ . It can be seen that the only simultaneous solution to these is  $(0, 0)$ . Here we write  $p(x, y) = g(x, y)^4 - h(x, y)^6$  where

$$g(x, y) = x \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{4}x^2 + \dots \right] = x [1 - x^2]^{\frac{1}{4}}$$

$$h(x, y) = iy$$

We then note  $\gcd(4, 6) = 2$ . □

As such by general theory we know that we can resolve this singularity to make  $X$  into a compact Riemann surface. This process involves removing the singularity at  $[0 : 0 : 1]$  and patching the two holes created.

## 21.2 Genus

We now check some topology using Riemann-Hurwitz.

**Proposition 21.3.**  $g(X) = 2$ .

*Proof.* As standard we consider the map  $X \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^1$  taking the coordinate  $y$ . Then  $z$  is generically double valued so the degree of the map is 2. This is ramified at the the 6 roots of  $1 - y^6 = 0$ , so using  $g(\mathbb{P}^1)$

$$g(X) = 1 + 2(0 - 1) + \frac{1}{2} \times 6 \times (2 - 1) = 1 - 2 + 3 = 2$$

This is calculated in Sage as follows:

```
sage: X.genus()
2
```

□

**Remark.** *This is to be expected, as here we are dealing with a hyperelliptic curve, of the form  $z^2 = h(y)$  where  $h$  is a polynomial of degree  $2g + 2$ .*

## 21.3 Symmetries

From the above prop we have the following corollary.

**Corollary 21.4.** *Through Hurwitz' theorem we know  $|\text{Aut}(X)| \leq 84$ .*

This is a very lax bound, we know many groups of order  $\leq 84$ . We now try to calculate  $\text{Aut}(X)$  more systematically. Firstly we note that as a hyperelliptic curve it comes with the hyperelliptic involution  $(y, z) \mapsto (y, -z)$  generating a  $C_2$  symmetry. We also have a  $D_6$  dihedral group of automorphisms generated by  $r : (y, z) \mapsto (\zeta y, z)$  and  $s : (y, z) \mapsto (1/y, iz/y^3)$  where  $\zeta = e^{\frac{i\pi}{3}}$ . We can check that as  $\zeta^3 = -1$

$$srs : (y, z) \mapsto (1/y, iz/y^3) \mapsto (\zeta/y, iz/y^3) \mapsto (\zeta^{-1}y, i^2\zeta^{-3}z) = (\zeta^{-1}y, z)$$

giving  $srs = r^{-1}$  as required from the dihedral group. The hyperelliptic involution commutes with this dihedral action, so in total we have found a  $\text{Aut}(X) \geq C_2 \times D_6$ . As  $|C_2 \times D_6| = 24$ , by Hurwitz' theorem we know that we could have at most one other automorphism of order either 2 or 3. This turns out not to be the case, and to see a general classification see for example [43].

To do the calculation in Sage, not we can use a result in [37] (translated here):

**Lemma 21.5.** *If  $X$  is a hyperelliptic curve then  $\text{Aut}(J(X), a) \cong \text{Aut}(X)$  where  $a$  is the canonical principal polarisation of the Jacobian.*

This allows us to calculate in Sage:

```
sage: A.<u,v> = QQ []
sage: Mod = sage.schemes.riemann_surfaces.riemann_surface
sage: S = Mod.RiemannSurface(u^2-1+v^6)
sage: G = S.symplectic_automorphism_group()
sage: G.structure_description()
'(C6_x_C2)_x_C2'
```

**Remark.** *Note that above Sage is acting as a GAP wrapper. The formatting translates to say  $G \cong (C_6 \times C_2) \rtimes C_2$*

## 21.4 Riemann's Bilinears and Period Matrices

We now view our curve  $X$  as a 6-fold covering of  $\mathbb{P}^1$  with branch points at  $z = \pm 1$ . We want to first calculate the monodromy associated to encircling these points, so let  $\gamma_{\pm}$  be a curve in  $\mathbb{P}^1$  that encircles  $\pm 1$  once anticlockwise (explicitly choose a circle of small radius  $\epsilon$ ). On  $\gamma_{\pm}$  take  $z = \pm 1 + \epsilon e^{i\theta}$ .

As we recall  $y^6 = 1 - z^2$ , on  $\gamma_+$  we see

$$y^6 = -\epsilon e^{i\theta} (2 + \epsilon e^{i\theta})$$

and on  $\gamma_-$

$$y^6 = \epsilon e^{i\theta} (2 - \epsilon e^{i\theta})$$

To both of these the associated monodromy can be written as  $\zeta$  the fundamental solution to  $\zeta^6 = 1$  as before, where we mean that multiplying by  $\zeta$  acts as the cycle of sheets that corresponds to the paths  $\gamma_{\pm}$ . Observe then that the curve  $\gamma = \gamma_+ - \gamma_-$  (a figure of 8 if we deform so the curves intersect at  $z = 0$ ) has associated monodromy 0, but is non-contractible, and so corresponds to cycles on  $X$ . Moreover, by changing the sheet the lift starts on we get actually get 6 distinct cycles, and we can choose them to have the right intersection numbers we would want of a canonical homology basis. Explicitly we take

$$a_1 = \gamma : (1 \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow 1)$$

$$b_1 = \gamma : (2 \rightarrow 3 \rightarrow 2)$$

$$a_2 = \gamma : (4 \rightarrow 5 \rightarrow 4)$$

$$b_2 = \gamma : (5 \rightarrow 6 \rightarrow 5)$$

where hopefully the notation is self-explanatory.



**Remark.** *One might ask, how do we know these have the right orientation to get the correct intersection?*

To determine what forms we need to integrate to get the period matrix we recall a statement in Miranda (pg 112)

**Lemma 21.6.** *Suppose that  $X$  is a projective plane curve of degree  $d$   $F(x, y, z) = 0$  where  $F(x, y, 1) = f(x, y)$  then if  $p(x, y)$  is a polynomial of degree at most  $d - 3$  then*

$$p(x, y) \frac{dx}{\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\right)}$$

*is a holomorphic differential.*

This applies to tell us that we can get a basis of holomorphic on differentials on  $X$  with  $\left\{\frac{dz}{y^5}, \frac{dz}{y^4}\right\}$ .

**Remark.** *The polynomials  $p$  we are taking here are actually  $6, 6y$ . We know that we only need  $g = 2$  of them so be sufficient.*

Now we can explicitly calculate. We fix the 1st sheet by asking that  $y(z = 0) = 1$ . We then set a normalisation our basis called  $\omega_1, \omega_2$  respectively by asking that

$$\int_{a_1} \omega_i = 1$$

.

**Remark.** *This can be done as over our cycles the forms will not integrate to zero, as can be seen for example with*

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{a_1} \frac{dz}{y^5} &= (1 - \zeta^{-5}) \int_{-1}^1 \frac{dz}{(1 - z^2)^{5/6}} = (1 - \zeta) B\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{6}\right) \\ \int_{a_1} \frac{dz}{y^4} &= (1 - \zeta^{-4}) \int_{-1}^1 \frac{dz}{(1 - z^2)^{4/6}} = (1 - \zeta^2) B\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}\right) \end{aligned}$$

*where to do the above calculation we have used*

$$\int_{-1}^1 \frac{dx}{(1 - x^2)^\alpha} = 2 \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{(1 - x^2)^\alpha} = \int_0^1 t^{-\frac{1}{2}} (1 - t)^{-\alpha} dt = B\left(\frac{1}{2}, 1 - \alpha\right)$$

*One might wonder is there a way to use the Pochhammer contour as part of the homology basis to recreate this result slightly more easily?*

We can get onto other sheets just by multiplying  $y$  by powers of  $\zeta$ , so for example we can calculate that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{b_1} \omega_1 &= \zeta^{2 \times -5} [(0 \mapsto 1) + \zeta^{-1 \times -5} (1 \mapsto -1) + (-1 \mapsto 0)] \\ &= \zeta^{-10} (1 - \zeta^5) (-1 \mapsto 1) \\ &= -\zeta^{-5} (1 - \zeta^{-5}) (-1 \mapsto 1) \end{aligned}$$

and following this through we get that the period matrix is

$$\Omega = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \zeta^{-5(4-1)} & \zeta^{-5(2-1)} & \zeta^{-5(5-1)} \\ 1 & \zeta^{-4(4-1)} & \zeta^{-4(2-1)} & -\zeta^{-4(5-1)} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & \zeta & -\zeta \\ 1 & 1 & \zeta^2 & \zeta^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

and so

$$\tau = \frac{\zeta}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ \zeta & -\zeta \end{pmatrix} = \frac{\zeta}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1+\zeta & -(1-\zeta) \\ -(1-\zeta) & 1+\zeta \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{3}i & -1 \\ -1 & \sqrt{3}i \end{pmatrix}$$

This can be calculated numerically in Sage as below (output formatted to fit in the document):

```
sage: S.period_matrix()
[ -0.6-1.1*I  0.6+1.1*I  1.2+0.0*I  -1.2+0.0*I]
[ -1.1-0.6*I -1.1-0.6*I  0.0-1.2*I  0.0-1.2*I]
sage: S.riemann_matrix()
[ 0.000+0.866*I  0.500+0.000*I]
[ 0.500+0.000*I  0.000+0.866*I]
```

**Remark.** *These numerical results seem to suggest the analytic answer is wrong, and that I should really be finding*

$$\Omega \sim \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & \zeta^2 & -\zeta^2 \\ 1 & 1 & \zeta & \zeta \end{pmatrix}$$

giving

$$\tau = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \zeta^2 & -\zeta^2 \\ \zeta & \zeta \end{pmatrix} = \frac{\zeta}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1+\zeta & 1-\zeta \\ 1-\zeta & 1+\zeta \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{3}i & 1 \\ 1 & \sqrt{3}i \end{pmatrix}$$

**Remark.** *Because of the action of both the modular group and the general linear group on  $\Omega$ , it is difficult to inspect the computed answer to see if it is correct. This is less true of  $\tau$ , for which the induced action of the general linear group is trivial, but we retain the action of the modular group now through matrix-valued fractional linear transforms.*

**Remark.** *We could also try this calculation viewing  $X$  as a standard hyperelliptic. General theory says that we have a basis of  $\Omega^1(X)$  given by*

$$\left\{ \omega_j = \frac{y^j dy}{z} \right\}_{j=0}^{g-1}$$

*and a generating set of  $H_1(X, \mathbb{Z})$  given by a suitable choice of independent closed paths  $c = \gamma_1 - \gamma_2$  where  $\gamma_i$  are the two lifts of a path in  $\mathbb{P}^1$  between branch points of the map  $X \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^1$ . In order to find the period matrices explicitly we need to calculate*

$$\int_c \omega_j$$

for these loops  $c$ . To be explicit for the paths in the base that we choose we take

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= \left\{ e^{\frac{it\pi}{3}} \mid t \in [0, 1] \right\} \\ b_1 &= \left\{ e^{\frac{i(t+1)\pi}{3}} \mid t \in [0, 1] \right\} \\ a_2 &= \left\{ e^{\frac{i(t+3)\pi}{3}} \mid t \in [0, 1] \right\} \\ b_2 &= \left\{ e^{\frac{i(t+5)\pi}{3}} \mid t \in [0, 1] \right\} \end{aligned}$$

## 22 $g = 2$

If we restrict to the case of studying Riemann surfaces with genus 2, we can further start to say more specific things.

### 22.1 Classification by automorphisms

Costa [12] and Bolza [6] have classified genus 2 hyperelliptic curves according to their automorphism groups. We can give a list of these using standard presentations of the curve in the form  $y^2 = p(x)$ , where  $p$  is a polynomial of degree 5 or 6:

insert table here

### 22.2 $D_6$

We now want to investigate the period matrix of a general  $D_6$  curve. To do this we recall two forms:

$$y^2 = x(x-1)(x-\lambda) \left( x - \frac{1}{1-\lambda} \right) \left( x - \frac{\lambda-1}{\lambda} \right) \text{ and } y^2 = (x^3 - \alpha^3)(x^3 - \alpha^{-3})$$

where restrictions on the value of  $\lambda, \alpha$  will apply. We will write  $\alpha^3 + \alpha^{-3} = -b$  so we have for the second form  $y^2 = x^6 + bx^3 + 1$ , and view this as a sixfold cover of  $\mathbb{P}^1$  with coordinate  $y$ . We will assume for later that  $b \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ . Here we can write the generators of the symmetry as

$$s : (x, y) \rightarrow (\rho x, y), \quad r : (x, y) \rightarrow (1/x, y/x^3)$$

where  $\rho = \exp(2\pi i/3)$ . Because of the  $y \mapsto -y$  symmetry from the hyperelliptic involution we know that the monodromy around  $\pm 1$  must be the same, and so we can get a closed curve  $a$  from a figure of 8 around the two branch points. We can then get a homology basis by shifting the sheet appropriately. For now we will specify this to mean

$$a_1 = a + ra, \quad a_2 = sa - rsa, \quad b_1 = sa, \quad b_2 = ra$$

Braden shows in his notes that if we choose the differentials

$$\omega_1 = (1-x) \frac{dx}{y}, \quad \omega_2 = (1+x) \frac{dx}{y}$$

we get the Riemann matrix

$$\tau = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1+2\rho}{2}R & \frac{\frac{1}{2}\tilde{R}}{R-(1+2\rho)} \end{pmatrix}$$

where

$$R = \frac{\int_a \omega_2}{\int_a \omega_1}$$

We want to now calculate this  $R$  explicitly. To fix the sheet of  $a$  and work out the monodromy explicitly, we let  $y = 1 + \epsilon e^{i\theta}$  for small  $\epsilon > 0$ , then

$$1 + 2\epsilon e^{i\theta} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) = x^6 + bx^3 + 1 \Rightarrow x_n(\theta) = \left(\frac{2\epsilon}{b}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} e^{\frac{i\theta}{3}} \rho^n + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^{\frac{2}{3}})$$

$$\text{or } x_n(\theta) = b^{\frac{1}{3}} e^{\frac{\pi i}{3}} \rho^n + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^{\frac{1}{3}})$$

We can get the same about  $-1$  if we introduce an additional factor of  $e^{\frac{i\pi}{3}}$  with every  $\epsilon^{\frac{1}{3}}$ . Hence we fix  $a$  by asking that it starts at  $y = 1 - \epsilon$  with  $x \approx -\left(\frac{2\epsilon}{b}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$  and immediately encircles  $y = 1$  anticlockwise. Now note that at  $y = 0$ , our sheets correspond to real solutions of

$$x^6 + bx^3 + 1 = 0 = (x^3)^2 + b(x^3) + 1$$

We can see the two orbits of sheets that are not related by monodromy around  $\pm 1$ , given by  $x_{\pm}^3 = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4}}{2} = \alpha^{\pm 3}$ , and then each of these corresponds to 3 sheets from the 3 possible cube roots. For simplicity we assume  $b > 4$  further so we can define  $\alpha$  to be the real cube root. Hence we find

$$\begin{aligned} \int_a \frac{dx}{y} &= \rho \int_0^\alpha \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(x^3 - \alpha^3)(x^3 - \alpha^{-3})}} + \rho \int_\alpha^0 \frac{dx}{-\sqrt{(x^3 - \alpha^3)(x^3 - \alpha^{-3})}} \\ &\quad + \int_0^\alpha \frac{dx}{-\sqrt{(x^3 - \alpha^3)(x^3 - \alpha^{-3})}} + \int_\alpha^0 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(x^3 - \alpha^3)(x^3 - \alpha^{-3})}} \\ &= 2(-1 + \rho) \int_0^\alpha \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(x^3 - \alpha^3)(x^3 - \alpha^{-3})}} \end{aligned}$$

and likewise

$$\int_a \frac{x dx}{y} = 2(-1 + \rho^2) \int_0^\alpha \frac{x dx}{\sqrt{(x^3 - \alpha^3)(x^3 - \alpha^{-3})}}$$

If we introduce the notation

$$F = \int_0^\alpha \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(x^3 - \alpha^3)(x^3 - \alpha^{-3})}}, \quad G = \int_0^\alpha \frac{x dx}{\sqrt{(x^3 - \alpha^3)(x^3 - \alpha^{-3})}}$$

Hence we can calculate, using that  $\rho^2 + \rho + 1 = 0$

$$R = \frac{(-1 + \rho)F + (2 + \rho)G}{(-1 + \rho)F - (2 + \rho)G}$$

To do the integrals  $F, G$  we let  $u = x^3$ ,  $\frac{1}{3}u^{-\frac{2}{3}}du = dx$  so (for example)

$$\begin{aligned} F &= \frac{1}{3} \int_0^{\alpha^3} u^{-\frac{2}{3}} (\alpha^3 - u)^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\alpha^{-3} - u)^{-\frac{1}{2}} du \\ &= \frac{\alpha}{3} \int_0^1 v^{-\frac{2}{3}} (1 - v)^{-\frac{1}{2}} (1 - \alpha^6 v)^{-\frac{1}{2}} dv \\ &= \frac{\alpha}{3} B(1/3, 1/2)_2 F_1(1/2, 1/3; 5/6; \alpha^6) \end{aligned}$$

setting  $v = \alpha^3 u$ , and so likewise

$$G = \frac{\alpha^2}{3} B(2/3, 1/2)_2 F_1(1/2, 2/3; 7/6; \alpha^6)$$

**Remark.** *With some hypergeometric gymnastics one should be able to prove that*

$${}_2F_1(1/2, 1/2; 1; 1 - \lambda(\alpha)) + \frac{\rho(\rho + \mathcal{I}(\alpha))}{1 + \mathcal{I}(\alpha)} = 0$$

where

$$\lambda(\alpha) = (\alpha^2 - 1)^3 [r(\alpha - 1)^2(\alpha - r)^3(\alpha + r)]^{-1}, \quad \mathcal{I}(\alpha) = \alpha \frac{B(2/3, 1/2)_2 F_1(1/2, 2/3; 7/6; \alpha^6)}{B(1/3, 1/2)_2 F_1(1/2, 1/3; 5/6; \alpha^6)}$$

with  $r = \exp(i\pi/3)$ ,  $\rho = r^2$ .

*This was proven by Adri Daalhuis, by showing that both the left and right terms of the sum satisfy the ODE*

$$0 = \frac{f'''(a)}{f'(a)} - \frac{3}{2} \left[ \frac{f''(a)}{f'(a)} \right]^2 - \frac{18a^4}{(1 - a^6)^2}$$

*and then showing that their first 3 taylor coefficients are the same (with a different sign). This was done in Maple.*

## 22.3 Burnside's Curve

Burnside's curve is given by the plane model

$$y^2 = x(x-1).$$

It has automorphism group  $S_4$  (plus hyperelliptic involution).

## Part IV

# Elliptic Curves

An important class of Riemann surfaces are those with genus 1. It turns out (ref?) that these are all a special class of curve called elliptic curve. These come with their own interesting properties which we introduce here.

## 23 Periodic Functions

### 23.1 Generic results

We will start with some general results about periodic complex functions. We fix  $f : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  to be a non-constant meromorphic single valued function.

**Lemma 23.1.** *The periods of  $f$  form a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module  $L$*

**Proposition 23.2.**  *$L$  is either*

- *trivial, ( $= 0$ )*
- *rank 1, ( $= \omega\mathbb{Z}$ )*
- *rank 2, ( $= \omega_1\mathbb{Z} \oplus \omega_2\mathbb{Z}$ )*

**Definition 23.3.** *A function with rank-2  $L$  is called an **elliptic function** and  $L$  is called the **period lattice**.*

**Definition 23.4.** *Given a period lattice  $L$ , a choice of  $\omega_1, \omega_2$  s.t.  $L = \omega_1\mathbb{Z} \oplus \omega_2\mathbb{Z}$  is called a **primitive pair**. For a primitive pair we call  $\tau = \frac{\omega_2}{\omega_1}$  the **period ratio**.*

It is common, as we will do now, to restrict the period ratio to have real imaginary part

**Proposition 23.5.** *Any pairs of primitive pairs are related by a fractional linear transform  $\in SL(2, \mathbb{R})$ . The corresponding period ratios are related by a map in the modular group*

**Definition 23.6.** *An **elliptic function field** is the class  $K = K(X)$  of functions of rational character on the complex torus  $X$*

**Remark.** *Identifying  $X$  with  $\mathbb{C}/L$  is equivalent to identifying  $K(X)$  with double periodic functions on the universal cover of  $X$ ,  $\mathbb{C}$ .*

**Proposition 23.7.**  *$K(X)$  is a differential field with differential  $\frac{d}{dz}$  inherited from the coordinate  $z$  on the universal cover.*

**Proposition 23.8.**  *$\deg f = 0$  iff  $f$  is constant*

*Proof.*  $\deg(f) = 0$  iff  $f$  has no poles. Pulling back to a doubly periodic function on  $\mathbb{C}$ , it is a bounded entire function, so constant by Liouville's theorem.  $\square$

**Lemma 23.9.** *Let  $f \in K(X)$ . Then*

$$\oint_{\partial \mathfrak{F}(X)} f(z) dz = 0$$

*Proof.* Use periodicity of the function.  $\square$

**Remark.** *This can be used to show  $\sum_{p \in X} \text{ord}_p(f) = 0$  for  $X$  a complex torus, by considering the integral of  $\frac{1}{2\pi i} \frac{f'}{f} \in K(X)$*

This result has some powerful corollaries, which we will see here now:

**Proposition 23.10.**  $\forall f \in K(X), \deg f \neq 1$ .

*Proof.* If  $\deg f = 1$  then the residue at the pole is

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial \mathfrak{F}(X)} f(z) dz = 0$$

so there is no pole.  $\square$

**Proposition 23.11.** Take  $f \in K(X)$  and let  $p_1, \dots, p_d$  be the zeros,  $q_1, \dots, q_d$  the poles. Then

$$\sum p_i - q_i \in L$$

*Proof.* Let  $L = L(\omega_1, \omega_2)$

$$\begin{aligned} \sum p_i - q_i &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint z d(\log f(z)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \left\{ \int_0^{\omega_1} [z - (z + \omega_2)] d(\log f(z)) - \int_0^{\omega_2} [z - (z + \omega_1)] d(\log f(z)) \right\} \\ &= \omega_1 \underbrace{\left[ \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_0^{\omega_2} d(\log f(z)) \right]}_{\in \mathbb{Z}} - \omega_2 \underbrace{\left[ \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_0^{\omega_1} d(\log f(z)) \right]}_{\in \mathbb{Z}} \end{aligned}$$

where we know the integrals are integer values as  $f$  takes the same values at the corners, so the argument must differ by an element of  $2\pi i\mathbb{Z}$   $\square$

## 23.2 Automorphisms

**Proposition 23.12.** Complex torus  $X$  always have bijective automorphisms  $z \mapsto z + c$ ,  $z \mapsto -z$ . The only involutions are the reflection  $z \mapsto -z$  and addition of half periods.

**Remark.** Note that every complex torus  $X$  admits the bijective automorphism descending from the map  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ ,  $z \mapsto nz$  for  $n \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus 0$

**Definition 23.13.** The complex torus  $X$  with primitive periods  $\omega_1, \omega_2$  is said to **admit complex multiplication** if  $\exists f$  an automorphism  $f(z) = cz$  for some  $c \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{Z}$ . In this we have  $i, j, k, l \in \mathbb{Z}$  s.t.

$$c\omega_2 = i\omega_2 + j\omega_1$$

$$c\omega_1 = k\omega_2 + l\omega_1$$

i.e.  $\frac{\omega_2}{\omega_1}$  is a fixed points of the fractional linear transform  $\begin{pmatrix} i & j \\ k & l \end{pmatrix}$ .

**Lemma 23.14.** The period ratio is a quadratic irrationality from the field  $\mathbb{Q}[\sqrt{(i+l)^2 - 4(il - jk)}]$

**Proposition 23.15.** Suppose  $X$  is a complex torus admitting complex multiplication via a bijective automorphisms, then the period ratio is either  $i$  or  $e^{\frac{\pi i}{3}}$ .

**Remark.** To see more about homomorphisms of complex tori, see §1.2 of [5].

### 23.3 Theta Functions

We start this section with a warning. There are *many* different ways of writing theta functions, and so you will need to be on your toes to connect those in these notes with those in other documents. We covered in §18.6 theta functions on general Riemann surfaces already, so aside from refreshing our definition, we will only state things that are new and leave the rest of the discussion for there.

**Definition 23.16.** For  $\tau \in \mathbb{C}$ ,  $\text{Im}(\tau) > 0$ , define the **Riemann theta function**

$$\theta(z) = \theta(z|\tau) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} e^{\pi i [n^2 \tau + 2nz]}$$

**Remark.** This is the definition given in [42] and on Wikipedia (as of June 2020), which agrees with [20].

**Proposition 23.17.** We have

$$\begin{aligned}\theta(z+1) &= \theta(z) \\ \theta(z+\tau) &= e^{-\pi i [\tau + 2z]} \theta(z)\end{aligned}$$

**Corollary 23.18.**  $\theta(z_0) \Leftrightarrow \forall m, n \in \mathbb{Z}, \theta(z_0 + m + n\tau) = 0$  and the order of the zero is the same

**Proposition 23.19.** The only zeros of  $\theta$  are

$$\frac{1+\tau}{2} + L(1, \tau)$$

and all these zeros are simple.

**Definition 23.20.** The **translated theta function** is

$$\theta^{(x)}(z) = \theta(z - (1/2) - (\tau/2) - x)$$

**Definition 23.21.** The **Jacobi theta functions** are

$$\theta_1(z|\tau) =$$

### 23.4 Jacobi Elliptic Functions

**Definition 23.22.** The **sinus amplitudinus** function is  $sn : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  given by

$$x = \int_0^{sn(x,k)} \frac{dy}{\sqrt{(1-y^2)(1-k^2y^2)}}$$

### 23.5 The Weierstrass $\wp$ Function

From our discussion of doubly-periodic functions, we know the minimal degree of a non-constant function is 2, so the simplest possible cases are

- two simple poles



- one double pole

We will construct the latter case.

**Definition 23.23.** *Pick a complex torus  $X$  with lattice  $L$ . The corresponding **Weierstrass function** is  $\wp : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$*

$$\wp(z) = \wp(z|L) = \frac{1}{z^2} + \sum_{\omega \in L \setminus 0} \left[ \frac{1}{(z - \omega)^2} - \frac{1}{\omega^2} \right]$$

**Proposition 23.24.** *The infinite sum is convergent and hence the  $\wp$  function is well defined.*

**Proposition 23.25.**  *$\wp$  has the following properties:*

- Even, i.e.  $\wp(z) = \wp(-z)$ .
- Double periodic with period lattice  $L$
- $\deg \wp = 2$  as a map  $\mathbb{C}/L \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^1$ , with only one double pole at  $z = 0$
- $\forall c \in \mathbb{C}^\times$ ,  $\wp(cz|cL) = \wp(z|L)$
- $\wp'(z) = -2 \sum_{\omega \in L} (z - \omega)^{-3}$
- $\wp'$  is odd
- $\forall \omega \in L$ ,  $\wp'(\omega/2) = 0$  and the half periods are the only roots.
- Let  $\omega_1, \omega_2$  be the primitive roots and  $e_1 = \wp(\omega_1/2)$ ,  $e_2 = \wp(\omega_1/2 + \omega_2/2)$ ,  $e_3 = \wp(\omega_2/2)$ . Then  $e_1, e_2, e_3$  are distinct.

**Proposition 23.26.**  *$\wp$  satisfies the differential equations*

$$\begin{aligned} (\wp')^2 &= 4(\wp - e_1)(\wp - e_2)(\wp - e_3) \\ &= 4\wp^3 - g_2\wp - g_3 \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} g_2 &= 60 \sum_{\omega \in L \setminus 0} \omega^{-4} \\ g_3 &= 140 \sum_{\omega \in L \setminus 0} \omega^{-6} \end{aligned}$$

are the **invariant of the cubic**

**Remark.** *It is shown in the proof of the above proposition that*

$$\begin{aligned} g_2 &= -4(e_1e_2 + e_2e_3 + e_3e_1) \\ g_3 &= 4e_1e_2e_3 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$e_1 + e_2 + e_3 = 0$$

**Remark.** We will sometimes use the notation  $\wp(z) = \wp(z|g_2, g_3)$

**Lemma 23.27.**  $g_2^3 - 27g_3^2 = 16(e_1 - e_2)^2(e_2 - e_3)^2(e_3 - e_1)^2$

*Proof.* Consider the polynomial  $y^2 = x^3 - (g_2/4)x - (g_3/4) = (x - e_1)(x - e_2)(x - e_3)$ . The discriminant of this cubic is

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta &= 4(g_2/4)^3 - 27(g_3/4)^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{16}(g_2^3 - 27g_3^2)\end{aligned}$$

However, we also know

$$\Delta = \prod_{i < j} (e_i - e_j)^2$$

□

**Corollary 23.28.**  $\wp'' = 6\wp^2 - \frac{1}{2}g_2$

### 23.5.1 Addition Theorems

**Proposition 23.29.**  $\wp(z + w) = \frac{1}{4} \left[ \frac{\wp'(z) - \wp'(w)}{\wp(z) - \wp(w)} \right]^2 - \wp(z) - \wp(w)$

**Corollary 23.30.**  $\wp(z + \omega_1/2) = e_1 + \frac{(e_1 - e_2)(e_1 - e_3)}{\wp(z) - e_1}$  and similar equations for cycles

*Proof.* Start by noting

$$\wp(z + \omega_1/2) + \wp(z) + e_1 = \frac{1}{4} \left[ \frac{\wp'(z)}{\wp(z) - e_1} \right]^2$$

□

**Corollary 23.31** (Duplication Formula).  $\wp(2z) = \frac{1}{4} \left[ \frac{\wp''(z)}{\wp'(z)} \right]^2 - 2\wp(z)$

## 23.6 Related Weierstrass Functions

See [16] pp.74-75 and here.

## 24 Elliptic Integrals

### 24.1 Elliptic Integral of the First Kind

Let us start by stating our assumptions of this section, namely:

- $u \in \mathbb{R}$
- $k \in (0, 1)$ .

We make the following definition:

**Definition 24.1.** *Jacobi's incomplete elliptic integral of the first kind is the map  $H \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$*

$$x \mapsto \int_0^x \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1-t^2)(1-k^2t^2)}} dt$$

where the integrand is taken to be real and positive for  $t \in (-1, 1)$ , and at the branch points  $\pm 1, \pm \frac{1}{k}$  the contour should take an infinitesimal circle above the point (i.e remaining in the UHP).

**Definition 24.2.** *The complete elliptic integral of the first kind is*

$$K = K(k) = \int_0^1 \frac{dt}{\sqrt{(1-t^2)(1-k^2t^2)}} \in \mathbb{R}$$

and the **complementary integral of the first kind** is

$$K' = K'(k) = \int_1^{\frac{1}{k}} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{(t^2-1)(1-k^2t^2)}} \in \mathbb{R}$$

**Proposition 24.3.** *We have the following results about  $K(k)$ :*

1.  $K(-k) = K(k)$
2.  $\lim_{k \rightarrow 0+} K(k) = \frac{\pi}{2}$
3.  $K(ik) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+k^2}} K\left(\frac{k}{\sqrt{1+k^2}}\right)$
4.  $K(i) = \frac{1}{4} B\left(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$  ( $B$  the beta function)
5.  $K'(k) = K(k')$  where  $k' = \sqrt{1-k^2}$
6.  $K(k) = (1+k_1)K(k_1)$  for  $k_1 = \frac{1-k'}{1+k'}$
7.  $K(k) = \frac{\pi}{2} \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} (1+k_n)$  for  $k_{n+1} = \frac{1-k'_n}{1+k'_n}$
8.  $K(k) = \frac{1}{1+k} K\left(\frac{2\sqrt{k}}{1+k}\right)$  (Landen's Transformation)

*Proof.* We will complete the proof in parts:

1. Trivial
2. say something about convergence, and then  $\int_0^1 \frac{dt}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} = \frac{\pi}{2}$  is a trig integral.
3. consider the transform  $t \mapsto \frac{t}{\sqrt{1+k^2(1-t^2)}}$
4.  $K(i) = \int_0^1 \frac{dt}{\sqrt{1-t^4}} = \frac{1}{4} \int_0^1 t^{-\frac{3}{4}} (1-t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} dt$  making the substitution  $t \mapsto t^{\frac{1}{4}}$ .
5. Use the substitution  $s = [1 - (k')^2 t^2]^{-\frac{1}{2}}$  to transform  $K(k')$  to  $K'(k)$ .
6. do the calculation

7. Iterate, observe  $k_{n+1} < k_n$  (one can show  $k_{n+1} < k_n^2$ ), and argue about convergence.
8. (Legendre 1811) Using the substitution  $t \mapsto \frac{(1+k')x\sqrt{1-t^2}}{1-k^2t^2}$  find  $K(k_1) = \frac{1+k'}{2}K(k)$  and the use Landen's transform.

□

These definitions of the complete integral make sense for the following result:

**Proposition 24.4.** *The incomplete elliptic integral of the first kind has the following straight line segments for ranges:*

$$\begin{array}{ll} [0, 1] \mapsto [0, K] & [-1, 0] \mapsto [-K, 0] \\ [1, 1/k] \mapsto [K, K + iK'] & [-1/k, 1] \mapsto [-K + iK', -K] \\ [1/k, \infty) \mapsto [K + iK', iK'] & (-\infty, -1/k] \mapsto (iK', -K + iK'] \end{array}$$

**Corollary 24.5.** *The image of the UHP under the elliptic integral of the first kind is the interior of the rectangle with corners  $\{K, -K, K + iK', -K + iK'\}$ , with the boundary of the rectangle being the image of the boundary of the UHP.*

**Definition 24.6.** *The incomplete elliptic integral of the second kind is the map  $H \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$*

$$x \mapsto \int_0^x \sqrt{\frac{1-k^2t^2}{1-t^2}} dt$$

using the contour above branch points.

**Definition 24.7.** *The complete elliptic integral of the first kind is*

$$E = E(k) = \int_0^1 \sqrt{\frac{1-k^2t^2}{1-t^2}} dt \in \mathbb{R}$$

and the complementary integral of the first kind is

$$E' = E'(k) = \int_1^{\frac{1}{k}} \sqrt{\frac{1-k^2t^2}{t^2-1}} dt \in \mathbb{R}$$

**Proposition 24.8.** *We have the following results about  $E(k)$ :*

1.  $E'(k) = K(k') - E(k')$
2. (Legendre 1825)  $K(k)E(k') + E(k)K(k') - K(k)K(k') = K'(k)E(k) - K(k)E'(k) = \frac{\pi}{2}$

*Proof.* To prove the first result use the substitution  $x \mapsto k^{-1}\sqrt{1-(k')^2x^2}$ .

The second result is more involved.

□

We can also get identities between the complete integrals by considering the derivative wrt  $k$ .

**Proposition 24.9.** *We have*

$$\bullet \quad k^{-1} \frac{d}{dk} [k(1-k^2) \frac{d}{dk} K(k)] = K(k)$$

- $k \frac{d}{dk} E(k) = E(k) - K(k)$
- $k(1 - k^2) \frac{d}{dk} K(k) = E(k) - (1 - k^2)K(k)$ .

*Proof.* We will prove just the final one. We start by noting

$$k^{-1} \frac{d}{dk} K(k) = \int_0^1 \frac{x^2 dx}{\sqrt{(1-x^2)(1-k^2x^2)^3}}$$

by simple differentiation under the integral. Then

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \int_0^1 \left[ \frac{d}{dx} \frac{x\sqrt{1-x^2}}{\sqrt{1-k^2x^2}} \right] dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \left[ \frac{1-x^2}{\sqrt{(1-x^2)(1-k^2x^2)}} - \frac{(1-k^2)x^2}{\sqrt{(1-x^2)(1-k^2x^2)^3}} \right] dx \\ \Rightarrow k^{-1}(1-k^2) \frac{d}{dk} K(k) &= k^{-2} \left[ \int_0^1 \frac{1-k^2x^2}{\sqrt{(1-x^2)(1-k^2x^2)}} dx + (k^2-1) \int_0^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1-x^2)(1-k^2x^2)}} dx \right] \\ &= k^{-2} [E(k) - (1-k^2)K(k)] \end{aligned}$$

□

**Definition 24.10.** The *incomplete elliptic integral of the third kind* is the map  $H \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$

$$x \mapsto \int^x \frac{1}{(t^2 - c^2)\sqrt{(1-t^2)(1-k^2t^2)}} dt$$

using the contour above branch points. The corresponding complete integrals is

$$\Pi(\alpha^2, k) = \int_0^1 \frac{1}{(1-\alpha^2t^2)\sqrt{(1-t^2)(1-k^2t^2)}} dt$$

for  $\alpha \in (-1, 1)$ .

**Proposition 24.11.**  $\Pi(k^2, k) = \frac{E(k)}{1-k^2}$

*Proof.* This result requires differential identities. Note

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \int_0^1 \left[ \frac{d}{dx} \frac{x\sqrt{1-x^2}}{\sqrt{1-k^2x^2}} \right] dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \left[ \frac{1-2x^2}{\sqrt{(1-x^2)(1-k^2x^2)}} + \frac{k^2x^2\sqrt{1-x^2}}{\sqrt{(1-k^2x^2)^3}} \right] dx \\ \Rightarrow K(k) - \frac{2(K(k) - E(k))}{k^2} &= -k \frac{d}{dk} \left[ \Pi(k^2, k) - k^{-1} \frac{d}{dk} K(k) \right] \end{aligned}$$

rearranging this to get a DE for  $\Pi$  finds the result.

□

## 24.2 Reduction of Elliptic Integrals

**Definition 24.12.** If  $R = R(x, y)$  is a rational function in  $x, y$  and  $y^2 = Q(x)$  is a polynomial of degree  $d = 3, 4$  with distinct roots then the integral

$$\int R(x, y) dx$$

is called a **general elliptic integral**.

**Remark.** Dealing with integrals such as the above when  $d = 1, 2$  or there are repeated roots are treated in your earlier calculus classes, for example:

- $d = 1$ : write  $y^2 = ax + b$  and make the substitution

$$x \mapsto \frac{1}{a}(x^2 - b)$$

- $d = 2$ : write  $y^2 = c(x - a)(x - b)$  and make the substitution

$$x \mapsto a = \frac{1}{4}(b - a) \left( x - \frac{1}{x} \right)^2$$

**Remark.** Depending on how the layout of this document ends up being, I may have a the section on Jacobi elliptic functions first. In this case, one would see that the incomplete integral of the first kind corresponds to the inverse of the function  $\text{sn}$ . We could also generate integrals from the inverses of  $\text{cn}, \text{dn}$ . However from theory of elliptic functions, we know we can write the inverses of these in terms of  $\text{sn}^{-1}$ , so transforms must exists for their corresponding integrals to reduce them to "known" forms. The same idea applies to the reduction of general elliptic integrals and we will see that now.

**Proposition 24.13.** A general elliptic integral can be written as

$$\int [y^{-1}R_1(x) + R_2(x)] dx$$

As a results of this, because any rational integral can be solved through partial fractions, in order to study general elliptic integrals we need know only how to deal with integrals of the form

$$\int \frac{R(x)}{y} dx$$

Let us start to deal with these:

### 24.2.1 $d = 3$

Write

$$Q(x) = (x - e_0)(x - e_1)(x - e_2)$$

with  $e_0, e_1, e_2$  distinct. Make the substitution

$$x \mapsto x^2 + e_0$$

sending

$$\frac{dx}{y} \mapsto \frac{2dx}{\sqrt{(x^2 + e_0 - e_1)(x^2 + e_0 - e_2)}}$$

The new  $Q$  has roots  $\pm\sqrt{e_1 - e_0}, \pm\sqrt{e_2 - e_0}$ , so wlog we may take  $d = 4$ .

### 24.2.2 $d = 4$

We make now start procedurally:

1. Write  $Q(x) = (x - e_0)(x - e_1)(x - e_2)(x - e_3)$
2. Send  $e_0, \dots, e_3$  to  $\pm 1, \pm \frac{1}{k}$  using a fractional linear transform. This sends  $Q(x) \mapsto (1 - x^2)(1 - k^2 x^2)$ . This is possible if the cross ratio is

$$\frac{e_0 - e_1}{e_0 - e_3} \frac{e_2 - e_3}{e_2 - e_1} = \frac{4k}{(1 + k)^2}$$

The distinctness of the  $e$  means that the cross ratio is not  $0, 1, \infty$  and so  $k \neq 0, \pm 1$ . **There is clearly a choice involved in  $k$  here, can it be shown that this choice does not matter, for example in simple cases?**

**Remark.** This value of the cross ratio can be calculated from the map that sends  $-1, \frac{1}{k}, -\frac{1}{k} \mapsto 0, 1, \infty$ . This is the map

$$z \mapsto \frac{z + 1}{z + 1/k} \frac{2/k}{1 + 1/k}$$

This corresponds to mapping the roots as said above. We could consider a different way of mapping the roots, for example  $e_0, e_1, e_2, e_3 \mapsto \frac{1}{k'}, -1, 1, -\frac{1}{k'}$ . The symbol  $k'$  is used as the cross ratio for this change is now found from the map

$$z \mapsto \frac{z + 1}{z + 1/k'} \frac{1 + 1/k'}{2}$$

i.e. the cross ratio is

$$\frac{(1 + k')^2}{4k'}$$

We can relate  $k'$  to  $k$  as

3. Write  $R(x) = R_1(x^2) + xR_2(x^2)$  and note

$$\int \frac{xR_2(x^2)}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)(1 - k^2 x^2)}} dx = \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{R_2(x^2)}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)(1 - k^2 x^2)}} d(x^2)$$

Hence this term reduces to previously solved cases ( $d = 2$ ). As such we are reduced to the case of

$$\int \frac{R(x^2)}{y} dx$$

for  $y^2 = (1 - x^2)(1 - k^2 x^2)$ .

4. Use the identities

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x^2 - a}{x^2 - b} &= 1 + \frac{b - a}{x^2 - b} \\ \frac{1}{(x^2 - a)(x^2 - b)} &= (a - b)^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{x^2 - a} - \frac{1}{x^2 - b} \right) \end{aligned}$$

to reduce to the classes of integrals

$$\begin{aligned} I_n &= \int \frac{x^{2n}}{y} dx \quad (n \geq 0) \\ I'_n &= \int \frac{(x^2 - c^2)^n}{y} dx \quad (n < 0) \end{aligned}$$

for  $y^2 = (1 - x^2)(1 - k^2 x^2)$ .

5. Use relation

$$nI_{n-1} - \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)(1 + k^2)I_n + (n + 1)k^2 I_{n+1} = x^{2n}y + \text{cst}$$

to reduce  $I_n$  to  $I_0$  and  $I_1$ . A similar technique can be applied to reduce  $I'_n$  to  $I'_{-1}$  and  $I'_0 = I_0$ .

**Idea.** The irreducible incomplete integrals are those of the first, second, and third kind:

$$\begin{aligned} I_0 &= \int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - x^2)(1 - k^2 x^2)}} dx \\ I_0 - k^2 I_1 &= \int \sqrt{\frac{1 - k^2 x^2}{1 - x^2}} dx \\ I'_{-1} &= \int \frac{1}{(x^2 - c^2)\sqrt{(1 - x^2)(1 - k^2 x^2)}} dx \end{aligned}$$

A lemma useful in the reduction is the following:

**Proposition 24.14.** Suppose the map sending  $e_0, \dots, e_3 \mapsto \pm 1, \pm \frac{1}{k}$  is

$$f(z) = \frac{az + b}{cz + d}$$

Then if we make the substitution  $t = \frac{ax+b}{cx+d}$  we have

$$Q(x) = \prod (x - e_i) = \frac{(1 - t^2)(1 - k^2 t^2)}{k^2(a - ct)^4 \prod (ce_i + d)^{-1}}$$



and

$$dx = \frac{ad - bc}{(a - ct)^2} dt$$

*Proof.* The inverse transform is

$$x = \frac{dt - b}{a - ct}$$

so

$$\begin{aligned} x - e_i &= \frac{(dt - b) - e_i(a - ct)}{a - ct} \\ &= \frac{(ce_i + d)t - (ae_i + b)}{a - ct} \\ &= \frac{t - f(e_i)}{(a - ct)(ce_i + d)^{-1}} \end{aligned}$$

The first part then follows by taking the product and knowing that the  $f(e_i)$  are the roots of  $(1 - x^2)(1 - k^2x^2)$ , and matching up the coefficient of  $t^4$ . For the second part we directly calculate.

$$\begin{aligned} dx &= \frac{d}{a - ct}(dt) + \frac{dt - b}{(a - ct)^2}c(dt) \\ &= \frac{ad - bc}{(a - ct)^2}(dt) \end{aligned}$$

□

**Corollary 24.15.** *We have*

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(x - e_0)(x - e_1)(x - e_2)(x - e_3)}} = \pm \frac{k(ad - bc)}{\prod \sqrt{ce_i + d}} \int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{(1 - t^2)(1 - k^2t^2)}}$$

where the  $\pm$  fixes the correct choice of sign.

**Lemma 24.16.** *The map sending  $-1, \frac{1}{k}, -\frac{1}{k} \mapsto 0, 1, \infty$  is*

$$z \mapsto \frac{2k}{1 + k} \frac{1 + z}{1 + kz}$$

and the inverse is

$$z \mapsto \frac{1}{k} \frac{(1 + k)z - 2k}{-(1 + k)z + 2}$$

**Remark.** *The above map isn't normalised yet, so fix it*

**Example 24.17.** *Consider the integral*

$$I = \int_0^2 \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2x - x^2)(4x^2 + 9)}} dx$$

We start by making  $Q$  monic by pulling out the factor of 2. This gives

$$I = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^2 \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2x-x^2)(x^2+9/4)}} dx$$

As such we have  $Q(x) = -x(x-2)(x-3i/2)(x+3i/2)$ . We can calculate the cross ratio for sending  $0 \mapsto C, 2 \mapsto 0, \frac{3i}{2} \mapsto 1, \frac{-3i}{2} \mapsto \infty$ :

$$C = \frac{0-2}{0+3i/2} \frac{3i/2+3i/2}{3i/2-2} = \frac{-4}{3i/2-2} = \frac{2i}{3/4+i}$$

This corresponds to a value of  $k = \frac{i}{2}$ . We want to construct a map sending  $0, 2, \frac{3i}{2}, -\frac{3i}{2} \mapsto 1, -1, \frac{1}{k}, -\frac{1}{k}$  so we consider

$$z \mapsto \frac{z+b}{cz+d}$$

Imposing the conditions finds  $b = d = -(1+c) = -\frac{3}{4}$ . We can, without changing our answer, rescale all of these to integers (namely  $a = 4, b = -3, c = -1, d = -3$ ) to make the calculations easier. For this transform we find  $ad - bc = -15$ . Further

$$\begin{aligned} -0-3 &= -3 \\ -2-3 &= -5 \\ -\frac{3i}{2}-3 &= -\left(3+\frac{3i}{2}\right) \\ -\frac{-3i}{2}-3 &= -\left(3-\frac{3i}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

giving

$$\prod (ce_i + d)^{-\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{2}{15\sqrt{3}}$$

so after the transform

$$I = \frac{-15i}{4} \times \frac{2}{15\sqrt{3}} \int_1^{-1} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{-(1-t^2)(1-k^2t^2)}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} K\left(\frac{i}{2}\right)$$

for  $k = \frac{i}{2}$ . Using

$$\begin{aligned} K(ik) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+k^2}} K\left(\frac{k}{\sqrt{1+k^2}}\right) \\ \Rightarrow K\left(\frac{i}{2}\right) &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}} K\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\right) \end{aligned}$$

we get

$$I = \int_0^2 \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2x-x^2)(4x^2+9)}} dx = \frac{2}{\sqrt{15}} K\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\right)$$

### 24.3 Connection to Elliptic Functions

Recall that when we defined the incomplete elliptic integrals,

Because of the differential equation for  $\wp$  we have the following result:

**Proposition 24.18.** *We have*

$$z - z_0 = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\wp(z_0)}^{\wp(z)} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{(t - e_1)(t - e_2)(t - e_3)}} \pmod{L}$$

where the each value of the integral depends on the contour chosen.

**Example 24.19.** *Choosing the correct sign of the radicals, we have*

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_1 &= \int_{\infty}^{e_1} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{(t - e_1)(t - e_2)(t - e_3)}} \\ \omega_2 &= \int_{e_1}^{e_2} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{(t - e_1)(t - e_2)(t - e_3)}} \end{aligned}$$

We can also use the Weierstrass function to solve elliptic integrals.

**Example 24.20.** *Consider the integral*

$$I(x) = \int_{\infty}^x \frac{dt}{\sqrt{t^4 + 6at^2 + b^2}}$$

for  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ . Make the substitution  $s = t^2$  to get

$$I(x) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\infty}^{x^2} \frac{ds}{\sqrt{s^3 + 6as^2 + b^2s}}$$

To put this bottom cubic in Weierstrass form we need to remove the  $s^2$  term, which can be achieved by making the translation  $u = s + 2a$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} I(x) &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{\infty}^{x^2+2a} \frac{du}{\sqrt{u^3 - (12a^2 - b^2)u - 2a(b^2 - 8a^2)}} \\ &= \int_{\infty}^{x^2+2a} \frac{du}{\sqrt{4u^3 - 4(12a^2 - b^2)u - 8a(b^2 - 8a^2)}} \end{aligned}$$

This is in Weierstrass form with  $g_2 = 4(12a^2 - b^2)$ ,  $g_3 = 8a(b^2 - 8a^2)$ . The final result is

$$I(x) = \wp^{-1}(x^2 + 2a \mid 4(12a^2 - b^2), 8a(b^2 - 8a^2))$$

## 25 Abel's Inversion Theorem

We start by noting to following connection, a complex torus  $X = \mathbb{C}/L$  with  $e_1, e_2, e_3$  given, has the behaviour

$$[\wp']^2 = 4(\wp - e_1)(\wp - e_2)(\wp - e_3)$$

in it's function field.

## 26 Elliptic Curves over Number Fields

So far we have only considered elliptic curves over the base field  $\mathbb{C}$ . Considering them over number fields changes the connection from analytic geometry to number theory. We will give a brief survey of some of these results, but not go into too much detail **until such a time comes about that I head into that area.**

**Theorem 26.1** (Shafarevich, [46]). *An elliptic curve  $E$  over number field  $K$  has finite  $K$ -isogeny class.*

In fact, one can get very strict results about how large the isogeny class can be. For example, [34] shows that the isogeny class can have size at most 8, and discusses when this occurs.

The value of the  $j$ -invariant can also tell us about the transcendentalty of a period.

**Theorem 26.2** (“Arithmetische Untersuchungen elliptischer Integrale”, Schneider, 1937). *If  $\tau$  is a quadratic irrational number in the upper half plane then  $j(\tau)$  is an algebraic integer. Moreover, if  $\tau$  is an algebraic number but not imaginary quadratic then  $j(\tau)$  is transcendental.*

## Part V

# Abelian Varieties

There are many excellent sources, but the main one for us will be [5]. [2] is also very good.

## 27 Polarisation

**Lemma 27.1.** *On a complex torus  $X = V/\Lambda$ , there is a canonical isomorphism  $\text{Pic}(X) = H^1(\mathcal{O}_X^*) \cong H^1(\Lambda, H^0(\mathcal{O}_V^*))$ .*

An element of  $H^1(\Lambda, H^0(\mathcal{O}_V^*))$  is called a **factor of automorphy** or **system of multipliers**, and we may write it as a function  $f = e^{2\pi i g}$ , where  $g : \Lambda \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is holomorphic in the second variable, and satisfies a cocycle condition

$$g(\gamma + \delta, z) = g(\gamma, z + \delta) + g(\delta, z).$$

**Definition 27.2.** *A **polarisation** on a complex torus  $X = V/\Lambda$  is  $H = c_1(L)$  the chern class of a positive line bundle  $L \rightarrow X$ .*

## 28 Jacobian Varieties

### 28.1 Automorphism Groups

The number of automorphisms of the Jacobian depends on the choice of principal polarisation, see [38].

One can numerically calculate the automorphism group in Sage using [9].

## 28.2 Poicaré Reducibility Theorem

Read about idempotents in the endomorphism algebra, [33].

## 28.3 Split Jacobians

**Definition 28.1.** We call a Jacobian **split** if it is isogenous to a product of abelian varieties of lower dimension. We say it is **totally split** if each of these factors is an elliptic curve.

**Example 28.2.** Burnside’s curve ( $g = 2$ ), Klein’s curve ( $g = 3$ ), Bring’s curve ( $g = 4$ ), and the Fricke-Macbeath curve ( $g = 7$ ) all have totally split Jacobians, being the product of a single elliptic curve isogeny class. The Jacobian of the Fermat curve  $x^5 + y^5 = 1$  ( $g = 6$ ) splits into a product of 3 simple two-folds with complex multiplication. These are each the curves with the maximal automorphism group for their respective genera.

Curves with split Jacobians are interesting for a few reasons, including that curves with split Jacobians often have the maximal number of points over finite fields (Weil bounds this number in “Courbes algebriques et varietes abeliennes”, 1971, see also Ibukiyama “On Rational Points of Curves of Genus 3 over Finite Fields”, 1993), and they have been used to “exhibit non-isomorphic curves with the same Jacobian” (“Curves of Genus 2 with Split Jacobian”, Kuhn, 1988).

[18] investigated the curves with totally split jacobians, focusing on curves related to modular forms. Here we collect some results about split Jacobians.

**Theorem 28.3** (Katsura, “On the structure of singular abelian varieties”, 1975). *If an  $n$ -dimensional complex torus  $T$  is isogenous to  $E^n$ , where  $E$  is an elliptic curve with complex multiplication, then  $\exists E_1, \dots, E_n$  elliptic curves s.t  $T$  is isomorphic to  $E_1 \times \dots \times E_n$ .*

**Theorem 28.4** (Nakajima, “On splitting of certain Jacobian varieties”, 2007). *The hyperelliptic curve with plane model  $y^2 = (x^3 - a^3)(x^3 - a^{-3})$  has (totally) split Jacobian.*

**Theorem 28.5** (Nakajima, “On splitting of certain Jacobian varieties”, 2007). *The family of genus-4 curves given by*

$$x_0x_1 + x_2x_3 = 0 = x_0^3 - x_3^3 + tx_2^3 - x_1^3$$

*has split Jacobian, being isogenous to two 2-dimensional varieties when  $t \neq 1$ , and to the 4-fold product of an elliptic curve when  $t = 1$ .*

The Nakajima paper gives further families of genus-4 curves with split and (totally) split Jacobians, as well as a family of hyperelliptic curves with split Jacobians for each even genus. “On Curves with Split Jacobians” (Yamauchi, 2008) gives examples in genus 5 and 17. Some of the earliest examples come from “Some Jacobian varieties which split” (Earle, 1978).

## 29 Prym Varieties

Let’s start off with some sources.

- [45] - discusses decomposition of Jacobians and relates them to Prym varieties coming from quotient maps.

## Part VI

# Moduli and Stacks

We will be building this part of the notes from Jarod Alper’s “Introduction to Stacks and Moduli”, following the reading course run by Johan Martens. Prerequisite knowledge will be chapters 2 and 3 of [26], the material from which should be covered in previous section of these notes.

## References

- [1] Michael F. Atiyah. Riemann surfaces and spin structures. *Annales scientifiques de l’École Normale Supérieure*, Ser. 4, 4(1):pp. 47–62, 1971. doi:10.24033/asens.1205.
- [2] Arnaud Beauville. Theta functions, old and new. 2011.
- [3] Pieter Belmans. ANAGRAMS: Grothendieck duality, 2014. Accessed on 04/05/2021.
- [4] Montserrat Teixidor I. Bigas. Half-canonical series on algebraic curves. *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society*, 302(1):pp. 99–115, 1987. ISSN 00029947. doi:10.2307/2000899.
- [5] C. Birkenhake, H. Lange. *Complex Abelian Varieties*. Grundlehren der mathematischen Wissenschaften. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2004. ISBN 9783540204886.
- [6] Oskar Bolza. On binary sextics with linear transformations into themselves. *American Journal of Mathematics*, 10(1):pp. 47–70, 1887. ISSN 00029327, 10806377. doi:10.2307/2369402.
- [7] H. W. Braden, V. Z. Enolski. Remarks on the complex geometry of the 3-monopole, 2006.
- [8] Harry W Braden, Timothy P Northover. Bring’s curve: its period matrix and the vector of Riemann constants. *Symmetry, Integrability and Geometry: Methods and Applications*, 8:pp. 065–, 2012. ISSN 1815-0659. doi:10.3842/sigma.2012.065.
- [9] Nils Bruin, Jeroen Sijsling, Alexandre Zotine. Numerical computation of endomorphism rings of Jacobians. *The Open Book Series*, 2(1):p. 155–171, 2019. ISSN 2329-9061. doi:10.2140/obs.2019.2.155.
- [10] Evan M. Bullock. Subcanonical points on algebraic curves, 2011.
- [11] Marston Conder. Hurwitz groups: A brief survey. *Bulletin (New Series) of the American Mathematical Society*, 23(2):pp. 359–370, 1990.
- [12] Antonio F. Costa, Gonzalo Riera. One parameter families of Riemann surfaces of genus two. *Glasgow Mathematical Journal*, 43(2):pp. 255–268, 2001. ISSN 0017-0895. doi:10.1017/S0017089501020092.
- [13] B. Deconinck, M. Patterson, C. Swierczewski. Computing the Riemann constant vector, 2015.
- [14] Andrea Del Centina. Weierstrass points and their impact in the study of algebraic curves: a historical account from the “lückensatz” to the 1970s. *ANNALI DELL’UNIVERSITA’ DI FERRARA*, 54(1):pp. 37–59, 2008. ISSN 1827-1510. doi:10.1007/s11565-008-0037-1.

- [15] Andreas Distler. Ein algorithmus zum lösen einer polynomgleichung durch radikale. 2005.
- [16] B. Dubrovin. Integrable Systems and Riemann Surfaces, 2009. Accessed on 27/04/21.
- [17] B. A. Dubrovin, I. M. Krichever, S. P. Novikov. Integrable systems, 1985. Accessed on 28/04/21.
- [18] T. EKEDAHN, J.-P. SERRE. Exemples de courbes algébriques à jacobienne complètement décomposable; exemples of algebraic curves with totally split jacobian. *Comptes rendus de l'Académie des sciences. Série 1, Mathématique*, 317(5):pp. 509–513, 1993. ISSN 0764-4442.
- [19] N. Ercolani, A. Sinha. Monopoles and Baker functions. *Communications in Mathematical Physics*, 125(3):pp. 385–416, 1989.
- [20] H.M. Farkas, I. Kra. *Riemann Surfaces*. Graduate texts in mathematics. Springer-Verlag, 1992. ISBN 9780387977034.
- [21] J.D. Fay. *Theta Functions on Riemann Surfaces*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 1973. ISBN 9783540065173.
- [22] P. Griffiths, J. Harris. *Principles of Algebraic Geometry*. Wiley Classics Library. Wiley, 2014. ISBN 9781118626320.
- [23] Phillip A. Griffiths. Linearizing flows and a cohomological interpretation of lax equations. *American Journal of Mathematics*, 107(6):pp. 1445–1484, 1985. ISSN 00029327, 10806377. doi:10.2307/2374412.
- [24] R.C. Gunning. *Lectures on Riemann Surfaces*. Annals of mathematics studies. Princeton University Press, 1966. ISBN 9780608078021.
- [25] R.C. Gunning, Princeton University. *Lectures on Vector Bundles Over Riemann Surfaces*. Annals of mathematics studies. Princeton University Press, 1967. ISBN 9780691079981.
- [26] Robin Hartshorne. *Algebraic geometry*. Graduate Texts in Mathematics, No. 52. Springer-Verlag, New York-Heidelberg, 1977. ISBN 0-387-90244-9.
- [27] N.J. Hitchin, G.B. Segal, R.S. Ward. *Integrable Systems: Twistors, Loop Groups, and Riemann Surfaces*. Oxford Graduate Texts in Mathematics. OUP Oxford, 1999. ISBN 9780191664458.
- [28] K. Hori, R. Thomas, S. Katz, American Mathematical Society, Clay Mathematics Institute, C. Vafa, R. Pandharipande, A. Klemm, R. VAKIL, E. ZASLOW. *Mirror Symmetry*. Clay mathematics monographs. American Mathematical Society, 2003. ISBN 9780821829554.
- [29] D. Huybrechts, Springer-Verlag (Berlin). *Complex Geometry: An Introduction*. Universitext (Berlin. Print). Springer, 2005. ISBN 9783540212904.
- [30] B. Iversen. *Cohomology of Sheaves*. Aarhus Universitet, Matematisk Institut: Lecture notes series. Inst., Univ., 1984.
- [31] Dennis Johnson. Spin structures and quadratic forms on surfaces. *J London Math Soc*, s2-22(2):pp. 365–373, 1980. ISSN 0024-6107. doi:10.1112/jlms/s2-22.2.365.

- [32] S. Kallel, D. Sjerve. Invariant spin structures on Riemann surfaces. *Annales de la Faculté des Sciences de Toulouse*, 19:pp. 457–477, 2006.
- [33] E. Kani, M. Rosen. Idempotent relations and factors of Jacobians. *Mathematische Annalen*, 284(2):pp. 307–327, 1989. ISSN 1432-1807. doi:10.1007/BF01442878.
- [34] M. A. Kenku. On the number of  $q$ -isomorphism classes of elliptic curves in each  $q$ -isogeny class. *Journal of Number Theory*, 15(2):pp. 199–202, 1982. ISSN 0022-314X. doi:10.1016/0022-314X(82)90025-7.
- [35] Zoe Laing, David Singerman. Transitivity on Weierstrass points, 2010.
- [36] Susan Landau, Gary Lee Miller. Solvability by radicals is in polynomial time. *Journal of Computer and System Sciences*, 30(2):pp. 179–208, 1985. ISSN 0022-0000. doi:https://doi.org/10.1016/0022-0000(85)90013-3.
- [37] Kristin E. Lauter, Jean-Pierre Serre. Geometric methods for improving the upper bounds on the number of rational points on algebraic curves over finite fields. *arXiv: Algebraic Geometry*, 2001.
- [38] Dami Lee, Catherine Ray. Automorphisms of abelian varieties and principal polarizations, 2018. doi:10.48550/ARXIV.1811.07007.
- [39] J. Lewittes. Automorphisms of compact riemann surfaces. *American Journal of Mathematics*, 85:p. 734, 1963.
- [40] K. Magaard, T. Shaska, S. Shpectorov, H. Voelklein. The locus of curves with prescribed automorphism group. 2002.
- [41] K. Magaard, H. Völklein. On Weierstrass points of Hurwitz curves. *Journal of Algebra*, 300(2):pp. 647–654, 2006. ISSN 0021-8693. doi:10.1016/j.jalgebra.2005.11.034.
- [42] Rick Miranda. *Algebraic curves and Riemann surfaces*, vol. 5 of *Graduate Studies in Mathematics*. American Mathematical Society, 1995. ISBN 9780821802687. doi:10.1090/gsm/005.
- [43] Nicolas Müller, Richard Pink. Hyperelliptic curves with many automorphisms, 2017.
- [44] M. Raynaud. Courbes sur une variété abélienne et points de torsion. *Inventiones mathematicae*, 71:pp. 207–234, 1983.
- [45] Sebastián Reyes-Carocca, Rubí E. Rodríguez. A generalisation of kani-rosen decomposition theorem for Jacobian varieties. *ANNALI SCUOLA NORMALE SUPERIORE - CLASSE DI SCIENZE*, pp. 705–722, 2019. doi:10.2422/2036-2145.201706.003.
- [46] Joseph H. Silverman. *The arithmetic of elliptic curves*. Graduate texts in mathematics ; 106. Springer, Dordrecht ;, second edition. ed., 2009.
- [47] D. Singerman, P. D. Watson. Weierstrass points and regular maps. *Geometriae Dedicata*, 66(1):pp. 69–88, 1997. ISSN 1572-9168. doi:10.1023/A:1004931427007.
- [48] I. Stewart. *Galois Theory, Third Edition*. Chapman Hall/CRC Mathematics Series. Taylor & Francis, 2003. ISBN 9781584883937.



- [49] Ravi Vakil. Baby Algebraic Geometry Seminar: An Algebraic Proof of Riemann-Roch, 2000. Accessed on 04/05/2021.
- [50] Ravi Vakil. The Rising Sea: Foundations of Algebraic Geometry, 2010.
- [51] R.S. Ward, R.O. Wells. *Twistor Geometry and Field Theory*. Cambridge Monographs on Mathematical Physics. Cambridge University Press, 1991. ISBN 9780521422680.
- [52] C.A. Weibel. *An Introduction to Homological Algebra*. Cambridge Studies in Advanced Mathematics. Cambridge University Press, 1995. ISBN 9780521559874.